

GERMAN

FLAMRIC

VOLUME 2

GRAMMATICAL STRUCTURES I

LESSONS 1-14

AUGUST 1981

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE  
FOREIGN LANGUAGE CENTER

## PREFACE

The four volumes entitled "Grammatical Structures" consist of 44 lessons and are designed to teach the basic structures of the German language. All of the lessons were taken entirely from the DLIFLC Basic Structure Series, with the exception of particular adaptations and additional material being included to make them almost self-contained for self-paced study or classroom instruction. The grammatical features contained in the lessons are sequenced according to difficulty, i.e. from simple to difficult, so that similar grammatical features are not necessarily placed in the same or consecutive lessons.

## GUIDELINES

Use of this book does not depend upon the availability of the recorded tapes from the DLIFLC Basic Structure Series. (Note: Cassette tapes are available from the Basic Structure Series.) If, however, use of the tape recordings is desired, you may easily adapt the tapes to the Grammatical Structures lessons. You must be aware, though, that the word "lesson" is substituted for "module" and the lesson number is one higher than the original module number (e.g. Lesson 1 is the Introductory Module and Lesson 2 is Module 1).

In order to focus maximum attention on the structural features themselves, the vocabulary used in the lessons has been restricted to a small number of high frequency words, most of which should already be quite familiar to you. Whenever additional words are introduced, the English meaning will be shown.

Each lesson usually includes two or more related sections indicated by a section topic. The end of each section is identified on the recording by two beeps. At the end of a given section, you may, if you wish, repeat that section for additional study and practice. In addition, it is important to note that if you are looking for a particular grammatical point, a comprehensive index can be found following the text at the end of each volume of the Grammatical Structures portion of FLAMRIC.

## OBJECTIVE

Upon satisfactory completion of a lesson and quiz, you should be able to easily and accurately speak and write correct German sentences embodying the structural features taught.

CONTENTS

LESSON 1	Present Tense of Vowel Changing Verbs . . . . .	1	Section 2 - Word Order for Emphasis . . . . .	92	
LESSON 2	Accusative Case I . . . . .	12	LESSON 7	Separable Prefixes and Imperative Forms of Verbs. . . . .	97
	Section 1 - Accusative Case Articles. . . . .	12		Section 1 - Separable Prefixes. . . . .	97
	Section 2 - Nouns with "-en" or "-n". . . . .	21		Section 2 - Imperative Forms. . . . .	108
	Section 3 - Inverted Word Order . . . . .	25		Section 3 - Imperative Forms of Separable Prefix Verbs . . . . .	115
LESSON 3	"Kein" and Possessive Adjectives	29	LESSON 8	Accusative Case II. . . . .	119
	Section 1 - The Use of "Kein" . . . . .	29		Section 1 - Prepositions which take the Accusative only . . . . .	119
	Section 2 - Possessive Adjectives . . . . .	33		Section 2 - Prepositions which can take Dative or Accusative Case. . . . .	123
LESSON 4	Dative Case I . . . . .	49		Section 3 - Contracted Forms of some Prepositions. . . . .	131
	Section 1 - Dative Case of the Definite Article . . . . .	49		Section 4 - Accusative Case of the Personal Pronouns. . . . .	133
	Section 2 - Dative Case of the Indefinite Article . . . . .	53	LESSON 9	Modal Auxiliaries . . . . .	139
	Section 3 - Dative of "Kein" and the Possessive Adjectives. . . . .	55		Section 1 - Formation and Use of Modal Auxiliary Verbs . . . . .	139
	Section 4 - "Schmecken" and "Gefallen". . . . .	61		Section 2 - Modal Verbs with Separable Prefix Verbs. . . . .	151
LESSON 5	Dative Case II. . . . .	67		Section 3 - The Use of "Mögen". . . . .	155
	Section 1 - Dative Case of the Personal Pronouns. . . . .	67		Section 4 - "Aber" and "Sondern". . . . .	160
	Section 2 - Prepositions which require the Dative. . . . .	73	LESSON 10	Plural Forms. . . . .	163
LESSON 6	Dative Case III . . . . .	85		Section 1 - Plural Group I. . . . .	164
	Section 1 - Sentences with Dative and Accusative Noun Objects . . . . .	85		Section 2 - Plural Group II . . . . .	167
				Section 3 - Plural Group III. . . . .	171
				Section 4 - Plural Group IV . . . . .	173
				Section 5 - Plural Group V . . . . .	175

Section 6 - Plural Forms of "Kein" Words . . . . .	177	Section 3 - Reflexive Constructions with Modal Auxiliary Verbs. . . . .	253
LESSON 11      Familiar Address I . . . . .	181	Section 4 - Reflexive Constructions referring to Clothing or Parts of the Body. . . . .	258
Section 1 - Familiar Personal Pronouns (Nominative Case); Familiar Forms of "Sein", "Haben", and other Verbs . . . . .	187	Summary Exercises . . . . .	261
Section 2 - Familiar Forms of Separable Prefix Verbs and Modal Auxiliary Verbs . . . . .	195	Index of Grammatical Features . . . . .	263
Section 3 - Familiar Imperatives. . . . .	203		
LESSON 12      Familiar Address II . . . . .	209		
Section 1 - Dative and Accusative Cases of the Familiar Personal Pronouns. . . . .	209		
Section 2 - Familiar Possessive Adjectives. . . . .	213		
LESSON 13      Reflexives I. . . . .	225		
Section 1 - Introduction to Reflexive Constructions; Reflexive Constructions in the Accusative Case . . . . .	225		
Section 2 - Reflexive Constructions in the Dative Case . . . . .	231		
Section 3 - Reflexive Constructions with Separable Prefix Verbs. . . . .	238		
LESSON 14      Reflexives II . . . . .	244		
Section 1 - Reflexive Constructions with Reciprocal Meaning. . . . .	244		
Section 2 - Reflexive Constructions in the Imperative. . . . .	247		



## LESSON 1

### PRESENT TENSE FORMS

### OF VOWEL-CHANGING VERBS

The stem of glauben is glaub-, that is to say, the infinitive minus the -en ending.

You are now in a position to analyze the present tense forms of a regular verb. Listen to and repeat each of the personal forms below, noticing that the forms are composed of the verb stem plus the underlined endings shown:

ich glaube (I believe)	wir glauben (we believe)
er, sie, es glaubt (he, she, it believes)	sie glauben (they believe) Sie glauben (you [formal] believe)

Verbs whose stem ends in -d or -t insert an -e- between the stem and the ending of the "er, sie, es" form to facilitate pronunciation. Thus, instead of the form (\*) er arbeit, which would be produced by following the infinitive stem-plus-ending rule,

an -e- is added between stem and ending to make the ending clearly pronounceable: er arbeitet. (Above and elsewhere, an asterisk is used to denote hypothetical forms which are not correct in German. Such forms are shown only for explanatory purposes, and should not be actively practiced.)

Listen to and repeat the present tense forms of arbeiten below, noticing especially the added -e- in the "er, sie, es" form:

ich arbeite (I work)	wir arbeiten (we work)
er, sie, es arbeitet (he, she, it works)	sie arbeiten (they work) Sie arbeiten (you [formal] work)

Omitted from both of the verb tables above are the singular and plural familiar forms (corresponding to the pronouns du and ihr), which will be introduced.

Review the present tense forms of glauben and arbeiten to make sure you are familiar with the endings for each personal form, then turn the page for exercises. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate present tense forms of the regular verb bleiben.

1. es \_\_\_\_\_
2. Sie \_\_\_\_\_
3. ich \_\_\_\_\_
4. sie [pl.] \_\_\_\_\_
5. wir \_\_\_\_\_
6. er \_\_\_\_\_
7. sie [sing.] \_\_\_\_\_

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. bleibt
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. bleiben
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. bleibe
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. bleiben
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. bleiben
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. bleibt
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. bleibt

START THE TAPE.

Say the appropriate present tense forms of the regular verb lernen.

1. wir ....
2. ich ....
3. es ....
4. Sie ....
5. sie [sing.] ....
6. er ....
7. sie [pl.] ....

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate present tense forms of the regular verb reden (to talk). Remember the caution about certain verb stems.

1. er \_\_\_\_\_
2. sie [sing] \_\_\_\_\_
3. es \_\_\_\_\_
4. Sie \_\_\_\_\_
5. wir \_\_\_\_\_
6. ich \_\_\_\_\_
7. sie [pl.] \_\_\_\_\_

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. redet
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. redet
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. redet
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. reden
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. reden
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. rede
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. reden

START THE TAPE.

Say the appropriate present tense forms of the regular verb finden.

- 1. wir ....
- 2. Sie ....
- 3. ich ....
- 4. sie [pl.] ....
- 5. es ....
- 6. sie [sing.] ....
- 7. er ....

There are some German verbs which use the same endings in the present tense as do the regular verbs, but have a vowel change in the stem of the third person singular ("er, sie, es" form). An example is the verb essen. What is the infinitive stem of this verb?

The infinitive stem of essen is ess-, to which the appropriate endings are added in the following persons:

- ich esse
- wir essen
- sie essen
- Sie essen

However, in the third person singular, the appropriate ending (-t) is NOT added to the stem ess- but instead to the stem iss-, which differs from ess- by its vowel. Thus, the correct form is er (sie, es) isst. Verbs which show a stem-vowel change in the third person singular of the present tense fall into a category often referred to as "vowel-changing verbs."

Frequent stem vowel changes are the following:

<u>FROM</u>	<u>TO</u>	<u>EXAMPLE</u>
e	i	ich gebe; er <u>gibt</u>
e	ie	ich sehe; er <u>sieht</u>
a	ä	ich fahre; er <u>fährt</u>

The following exercises will teach you the present tense forms of some of the most frequently-used vowel-changing verbs and will also help you develop a feeling for the types of changes involved.

Listen to and repeat the present tense forms of the vowel-changing verb treffen:

ich treffe                      wir treffen

er, sie, es trifft            sie treffen

The verb nehmen (to take) follows the same "e to i" pattern. What is the correct third person singular form of nehmen?

The correct form is er (sie, es) nimmt. Please note that the vowel-changing verb nehmen shows irregular spelling by dropping h and doubling m.

Other common verbs of this pattern are essen, helfen (to help), geben, and sprechen. Say the third person singular forms of these four verbs.

The correct forms are er (sie, es) isst  
er (sie, es) hilft  
er (sie, es) gibt  
er (sie, es) spricht

The following verbs show a stem-vowel change from e to ie. Listen and repeat:

lesen (ich lese; er liest)

sehen (ich sehe; er sieht)

A stem-vowel change from a to the unlauded ä takes place in:

waschen                      (ich wasche; er wäscht)  
schlafen (to sleep)        (ich schlafe; er schläft)  
tragen (to carry, wear)    (ich trage; er trägt)

Study the three groups of vowel-changing verbs above until you feel you know the third person singular forms thoroughly.

START THE TAPE.

Say the appropriate present tense form of the verbs shown in parentheses.

1. (sehen)                      er ....
2. (schlafen)                 er ....
3. (nehmen)                  er ....
4. (tragen)                    er ....
5. (geben)                    er ....
6. (treffen)                  er ....
7. (sprechen)                er ....
8. (lesen)                    er ....
9. (helfen)                   er ....
10. (essen)                   er ....
11. (waschen)                er ....

**NOTES**

Write the third person singular form of the verbs shown in parentheses.

1. (nehmen) er \_\_\_\_\_
2. (schlafen) er \_\_\_\_\_
3. (waschen) er \_\_\_\_\_
4. (helfen) er \_\_\_\_\_
5. (treffen) er \_\_\_\_\_
6. (lesen) er \_\_\_\_\_
7. (sehen) er \_\_\_\_\_
8. (geben) er \_\_\_\_\_
9. (essen) er \_\_\_\_\_
10. (sprechen) er \_\_\_\_\_
11. (tragen) er \_\_\_\_\_

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate present tense form of the verbs shown in parentheses.

1. (lesen) er \_\_\_\_\_
2. (helfen) er \_\_\_\_\_
3. (essen) er \_\_\_\_\_
4. (waschen) er \_\_\_\_\_
5. (sehen) er \_\_\_\_\_
6. (tragen) er \_\_\_\_\_
7. (schlafen) er \_\_\_\_\_
8. (sprechen) er \_\_\_\_\_
9. (nehmen) er \_\_\_\_\_
10. (treffen) er \_\_\_\_\_
11. (geben) er \_\_\_\_\_

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. nimmt
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. schläft
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. wäscht
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. hilft
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. trifft
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. liest
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. sieht
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. gibt
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. isst
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. spricht
- \_\_\_\_\_ 11. trägt

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. liest
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. hilft
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. isst
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. wäscht
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. sieht
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. trägt
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. schläft
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. spricht
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. nimmt
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. trifft
- \_\_\_\_\_ 11. gibt

The following exercise combines the third person singular forms of vowel-changing verbs with the other personal forms. As you remember, only the third person singular forms show a stem-vowel change. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate present tense forms of the verbs shown in parentheses.

- 1. (essen) sie [sing.] \_\_\_\_\_
- 2. (lesen) wir \_\_\_\_\_
- 3. (waschen) es \_\_\_\_\_
- 4. (geben) er \_\_\_\_\_
- 5. (helfen) sie [pl.] \_\_\_\_\_
- 6. (treffen) ich \_\_\_\_\_
- 7. (tragen) er \_\_\_\_\_
- 8. (sehen) Sie \_\_\_\_\_
- 9. (schlafen) wir \_\_\_\_\_
- 10. (nehmen) wir \_\_\_\_\_
- 11. (sprechen) es \_\_\_\_\_
- 12. (waschen) ich \_\_\_\_\_

- 13. (helfen) wir \_\_\_\_\_
- 14. (essen) er \_\_\_\_\_
- 15. (nehmen) sie [pl.] \_\_\_\_\_
- 16. (lesen) sie [sing.] \_\_\_\_\_
- 17. (geben) Sie \_\_\_\_\_
- 18. (tragen) er \_\_\_\_\_
- 19. (sprechen) sie [sing.] \_\_\_\_\_
- 20. (treffen) ich \_\_\_\_\_
- 21. (schlafen) er \_\_\_\_\_
- 22. (sehen) es \_\_\_\_\_
- 23. (nehmen) wir \_\_\_\_\_
- 24. (geben) sie [sing.] \_\_\_\_\_

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.



If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. isst
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. lesen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. wäscht
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. gibt
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. helfen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. treffe
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. trägt
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. sehen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. schlafen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. nehmen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 11. spricht
- \_\_\_\_\_ 12. wasche

- \_\_\_\_\_ 13. helfen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 14. isst
- \_\_\_\_\_ 15. nehmen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 16. liest
- \_\_\_\_\_ 17. geben
- \_\_\_\_\_ 18. trägt
- \_\_\_\_\_ 19. spricht
- \_\_\_\_\_ 20. treffe
- \_\_\_\_\_ 21. schläft
- \_\_\_\_\_ 22. sieht
- \_\_\_\_\_ 23. nehmen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 24. gibt

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate present tense form of the verbs shown in parentheses.

1. (treffen) sie [pl.] ....
2. (lesen) ich ....
3. (schlafen) sie [sing.] ....
4. (geben) wir ....
5. (sehen) er ....
6. (sprechen) Sie ....
7. (essen) es ....
8. (nehmen) sie [sing.] ....
9. (waschen) Sie ....
10. (tragen) er ....
11. (treffen) ich ....
12. (geben) sie [sing.] ....
13. (helfen) er ....
14. (schlafen) wir ....

The following exercise combines both regular verbs and vowel-changing verbs, in all personal forms. Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate present tense forms of the verbs in parentheses

- |                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| 1. (lesen)      | Er .... ein Buch.                               |
| 2. (helfen)     | Wir .... Karl.                                  |
| 3. (schlafen)   | Das Kind ....                                   |
| 4. (bleiben)    | .... Sie in München?                            |
| 5. (waschen)    | Paul .... das Auto.                             |
| 6. (geben)      | Ich .... Anni den Bleistift                     |
| 7. (sprechen)   | Der Lehrer .... mit den Schülern.               |
| 8. (finden)     | Wir .... ein Haus.                              |
| 9. (sehen)      | Ich .... den Ball.                              |
| 10. (tragen)    | Der Mann .... den Stuhl                         |
| 11. (schreiben) | Das Kind .... die Adresse.                      |
| 12. (trinken)   | Vater .... Kaffee.                              |
| 13. (treffen)   | Ich .... Heidi in dem Restaurant.               |
| 14. (geben)     | Herr Meyer .... dem Nachbarn eine Tasse Kaffee. |

## LESSON 2

### Accusative Case I

The purpose of this lesson is to teach you the accusative case of the definite and indefinite articles and the accusative form of the so-called "-n" nouns, that is, nouns that have an "-en" or "-n" ending in the accusative case. We shall also practice inverted word order in questions and in sentences where the accusative object is placed at the beginning of the sentence for emphasis.

### 1. Accusative Case Articles

A short explanation of the term accusative case may be helpful. Study the following sentences:

1. The lady is beautiful.
2. I like the lady.

From your previous study of English grammar, you probably know that "the lady," as it appears in sentence 1, is the subject of the sentence. Can you say what grammatical function "the lady" has in sentence 2?

In sentence 2, "the lady" is the direct object of the sentence.

What can you say about the form of the definite article in English when used in subject position and in direct object position?

In English, the form of the definite article is the same in both subject position and direct object position.

Now let us replace the definite article by the indefinite article:

1. A lady is beautiful.
2. I like a lady.

What can you say about the form of the indefinite article in English when used in subject position and in direct object position?

In English, the form of the indefinite article is the same in both subject position and direct object position.

Now study the following German sentences:

Die Dame ist schön.

Ich liebe die Dame.

Eine Dame ist schön.

Ich liebe eine Dame.

Das Buch ist interessant.

Ich lese das Buch.

Ein Buch ist interessant.

Ich lese ein Buch.

What can you observe about the forms of the definite article and the forms of the indefinite article in each of the sentence pairs above, that is, for feminine and neuter nouns in subject position or direct object position?

Say the entire German sentence, using the appropriate definite article.

1. Wir haben .... Wein.
2. Sie kennen .... Herrn.
3. Ich schreibe .... Brief.
4. Er holt .... Zeitung.
5. Sie kennen .... Mann.
6. Sie liest .... Buch.
7. Ich trinke .... Bier.
8. Sie hat .... Geld.
9. Er raucht .... Zigarette.
10. Wir sehen .... Auto.
11. Sie liebt .... Schüler.

Say the entire German sentence, using the appropriate definite article as in the preceding exercise.

1. Sie sieht .... Lehrer.
2. Wir kennen .... Dame.
3. Sie lesen .... Brief.
4. Ich habe .... Geld.
5. Sie fragen .... Mann.
6. Sie haben .... Buch.
7. Er liest .... Zeitung.
8. Sie kennt .... Arzt.
9. Wir sehen .... Herrn.
10. Ich höre .... Auto.
11. Sie trifft .... Schüler.

Like English, German uses the same form for both the subject and direct object position. With feminine nouns the forms are die and eine; with neuter nouns, they are das and ein.

However, observe now what happens if we use a masculine German noun.

Der Bleistift ist gut.

Ich habe den Bleistift.

Ein Bleistift ist gut.

Ich habe einen Bleistift.

With masculine nouns used as a direct object, the definite article changes from der to den and the indefinite article changes from ein to einen.

You now realize that German uses a different case to indicate the direct object. This is called the accusative case.

In the following exercises, we will practice the accusative case with feminine, neuter, and masculine nouns. Stop your tape recorder and study the table below.

STOP THE TAPE:

	<u>Nominative</u>	<u>Accusative</u>
Masculine	der	<u>den</u>
Feminine	die	die
Neuter	das	das
Masculine	ein	<u>einen</u>
Feminine	eine	eine
Neuter	ein	ein

Listen and repeat.

1. Ich sehe die Dame.
2. Ich sehe der Lehrer.
3. Er sieht den Kellner.
4. Er liest die Zeitung.
5. Wir lesen den Brief.
6. Sie sehen den Vater.
7. Sie fragen den Schüler.
8. Ich kenne den Arzt.
9. Sie kennen die Lehrerin.
10. Er liest das Buch.
11. Er hat das Geld.
12. Er kennt den Mann.

Write the correct definite article.

1. Er sieht \_\_\_\_\_ Mädchen.
2. Wir kennen \_\_\_\_\_ Dame.
3. Er hat \_\_\_\_\_ Brief.
4. Sie liebt \_\_\_\_\_ Schüler.
5. Sie hat \_\_\_\_\_ Uhr.
6. Wir sehen \_\_\_\_\_ Kellner.
7. Ich höre \_\_\_\_\_ Lehrerin.
8. Sie nehmen \_\_\_\_\_ Glas.
9. Ich sehe \_\_\_\_\_ Auto.
10. Wir kennen \_\_\_\_\_ Herrn.

10. den  
 9. das  
 8. das  
 7. die  
 6. den

5. die  
 4. den  
 3. den  
 2. die  
 1. das

Write the German.

1. He sees the man.

2. The woman has the book.

3. We see the table.

4. They read the newspaper.

5. We see the lady.

6. You have the wine.

7. We see the house.

8. I hear the mother.

9. She knows the teacher.(M.)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write correctly the entire German sentence.

1. Er sieht den Mann.

---

2. Die Frau hat das Buch.

---

3. Wir sehen den Tisch.

---

4. Sie lesen die Zeitung.

---

5. Wir sehen die Dame.

---

6. Sie haben den Wein.

---

7. Wir sehen das Haus.

---

8. Ich höre die Mutter.

---

9. Sie kennt den Lehrer.

---

START THE TAPE.

We now turn to the indefinite article.

Say the indefinite article used with the accusative form of feminine nouns.

Say the indefinite article used with the accusative form of neuter nouns.

Say the indefinite article used with the accusative form of masculine nouns.

In the following exercise, listen to sentences using the definite article and say the sentences aloud, replacing the definite article by the indefinite article:

1. Wir kennen den Arzt.

2. Sie liest das Buch.

3. Ich habe den Bleistift.

4. Sie kaufen den Ball.

5. Er sieht die Lehrerin.

6. Sie liebt den Schüler.

7. Ich rauche die Zigarette.

8. Er kennt das Mädchen.

9. Wir fragen die Frau.

10. Er besucht den Lehrer.



Say the entire German sentence, using the appropriate indefinite article.

1. Er hat .... Bleistift.
2. Wir schreiben .... Brief.
3. Ich habe .... Zigarette.
4. Sie liest .... Buch.
5. Sie fragen .... Arzt.
6. Wir kennen .... Dame.
7. Ich hole .... Zeitung.
8. Sie kaufen .... Bleistift.
9. Er liebt .... Mädchen.
10. Er sieht .... Kind.
11. Wir treffen .... Schüler.

Write the appropriate indefinite article.

1. Sie liebt \_\_\_\_\_ Herrn.
2. Ich sehe \_\_\_\_\_ Lehrer.
3. Wir waschen \_\_\_\_\_ Auto.
4. Sie kennt \_\_\_\_\_ Arzt.
5. Sie fragen \_\_\_\_\_ Mädchen.
6. Er sieht \_\_\_\_\_ Haus.
7. Wir trinken \_\_\_\_\_ Bier.
8. Ich kenne \_\_\_\_\_ Dame.
9. Sie holt \_\_\_\_\_ Zeitung.
10. Er trifft \_\_\_\_\_ Freund.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

The correct indefinite articles are shown below. If you answered correctly, make a check mark in the space provided. If you answered incorrectly, write both the correct indefinite article and the noun.

NOTES

1. einen \_\_\_\_\_
2. einen \_\_\_\_\_
3. ein \_\_\_\_\_
4. einen \_\_\_\_\_
5. ein \_\_\_\_\_
6. ein \_\_\_\_\_
7. ein \_\_\_\_\_
8. eine \_\_\_\_\_
9. eine \_\_\_\_\_
10. einen \_\_\_\_\_

Write the entire German sentence. (Notice that both definite and indefinite articles are used.)

NOTES

1. I wash a car.

---

2. You read the newspaper.

---

3. He loves a girl.

---

4. She goes and gets a pencil.

---

5. We meet a friend. (masc.)

---

6. We have a teacher. (fem.)

---

7. I ask the child.

---

8. He knows the movie.

---

9. They ask the doctor.

---

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. Ich wasche ein Auto.

---

2. Sie lesen die Zeitung.

---

3. Er liebt ein Mädchen.

---

4. Sie holt einen Bleistift.

---

5. Wir treffen einen Freund.

---

6. Wir haben eine Lehrerin.

---

7. Ich frage das Kind.

---

8. Er kennt den Film.

---

9. Sie fragen den Arzt.

---

NOTES

START THE TAPE.

## Section 2

### Nouns with "-en" or "-n" Accusative

Study these sentences:

#### Nominative Case

Hier ist der Schütze.

Hier ist der Soldat.

#### Accusative Case

Ich sehe den Schützen.

Ich sehe den Soldaten.

What can you say about the form of the noun Schütze when it is used in the accusative case?

What can you say about the form of the noun Soldat when it is used in the accusative case?

A number of German nouns (virtually all of them masculine) add either -en or -n when they are used in the accusative case, so that the final syllable becomes -en. Listen and repeat:

#### Nominative Case

der Schütze

der Soldat

der Student

der Kamerad

#### Accusative Case

den Schützen

den Soldaten

den Studenten

den Kameraden

The general rule is that when the nominative form of the noun already ends in -e, only -n is added (as in der Schütze-den Schützen). When the nominative form of the noun ends in some other letter, -en is added. Two exceptions to this rule are Nachbar and Herr, which add only -n, even though their nominative form ends in a letter other than -e:

der Herr

der Nachbar

den Herrn

den Nachbarn

Say the German, replacing the definite article by the indefinite article. Notice that all these nouns add -en or -n in the accusative.

1. Er trifft den Kameraden.
2. Wir sehen den Schützen.
3. Ich frage den Herrn.
4. Sie hören den Nachbarn.
5. Sie liebt den Soldaten.
6. Wir fragen den Klassenkameraden.

Say the German. Notice that both definite and indefinite articles are called for as well as "no-accusative-ending" nouns and -en or -n accusative nouns.

## NOTES

1. She loves a private.
2. We know the soldier.
3. She smokes a cigarette.
4. He is looking for a waiter.
5. We see the room.
6. I ask a neighbor.
7. We see the girl friend.
8. He has a pencil.
9. She meets the gentleman.
10. They read a book.

Fill in the blanks on the basis of the English sentence. Note that both definite and indefinite articles are called for. If any noun ending is required, write it in the space provided. Otherwise, leave this space blank.

1. We ask the soldier.

Wir fragen \_\_\_\_\_ Soldat \_\_\_\_\_.

2. She knows the teacher. (masc.)

Sie kennt \_\_\_\_\_ Lehrer \_\_\_\_\_.

3. We see a student. (masc.)

Wir sehen \_\_\_\_\_ Schüler \_\_\_\_\_.

4. I know a lady.

Ich kenne \_\_\_\_\_ Dame \_\_\_\_\_.

5. He goes and gets a newspaper.

Er holt \_\_\_\_\_ Zeitung \_\_\_\_\_.

6. She meets a neighbor.

Sie trifft \_\_\_\_\_ Nachbar \_\_\_\_\_.

7. We ask the doctor.

Wir fragen \_\_\_\_\_ Arzt \_\_\_\_\_.

8. You read the letter.

Sie lesen \_\_\_\_\_ Brief \_\_\_\_\_.

9. He looks for a pencil.

Er sucht \_\_\_\_\_ Bleistift \_\_\_\_\_.

10. I know the waiter.

Ich kenne \_\_\_\_\_ Kellner \_\_\_\_\_.

Fill in the blanks as in the preceding exercise.

1. She loves the man.

Sie liebt \_\_\_\_\_ Mann \_\_\_\_\_.

2. You read the book.

Sie lesen \_\_\_\_\_ Buch \_\_\_\_\_.

3. They have the money.

Sie haben \_\_\_\_\_ Geld \_\_\_\_\_.

4. We wash a car.

Wir waschen \_\_\_\_\_ Auto \_\_\_\_\_.

5. He has a child.

Er hat \_\_\_\_\_ Kind \_\_\_\_\_.

6. They see the soldier.

Sie sehen \_\_\_\_\_ Soldat \_\_\_\_\_.

7. You know the father.

Sie kennen \_\_\_\_\_ Vater \_\_\_\_\_.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. den Soldaten
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. den Lehrer
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. einen Schüler.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. eine Dame
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. eine Zeitung
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. einen Nachbarn
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. den Arzt
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. den Brief
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. einen Bleistift

\_\_\_\_\_ 10. den Kellner

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. den Mann
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. das Buch
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. das Geld
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. ein Auto
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. ein Kind
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. den Soldaten
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. den Vater

START THE TAPE.



### Section 3

#### Inverted Word Order

Listen to the following sentences:

1. Der Herr kennt die Dame.
2. Kennt der Herr die Dame?

In the first example, the subject of the sentence (der Herr) is at the beginning of the sentence, followed by the verb (kennt).

What can you say about the relative positions of the subject and verb in the second example?

In the second sentence, the subject and verb change positions. The verb appears first, followed by the subject.

The first sentence was a declarative sentence. What type of sentence is the second example?

In German, a declarative sentence can be changed into a question by exchanging the positions of subject and verb. This can be represented as follows:

DECLARATIVE SENTENCES: subject - verb

INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES: verb - subject

In written German, interrogative sentences end with a question mark, as in English. Spoken German questions have a characteristic rising intonation which helps to mark them as interrogative, in addition to the verb-subject inversion.

Listen to the following pairs of declarative and interrogative sentences, noticing the verb-subject inversion and also the difference in intonation. Repeat only the questions.

1. Der Soldat liebt das Mädchen.  
Liebt der Soldat das Mädchen?
2. Der Lehrer hat ein Auto.  
Hat der Lehrer ein Auto?
3. Das Kind hat den Ball.  
Hat das Kind den Ball?
4. Der Soldat grüsst den Offizier.  
Grüsst der Soldat den Offizier?
5. Sie raucht eine Zigarette.  
Raucht sie eine Zigarette?

Say the German, changing the declarative sentence into the corresponding question. Pay particular attention to intonation.

1. Die Dame trifft einen Herrn.
2. Das Kind holt den Bleistift.
3. Er isst den Kuchen.
4. Der Soldat trinkt das Bier.
5. Wir lesen eine Zeitung.

Inverted word order is also often used in declarative sentences to give special emphasis to a particular sentence element. Consider the following sentence:

Das Kind sucht einen Ball.

(The child is looking for a ball.)

Suppose that the speaker (or writer) wished to emphasize that the child is specifically looking for a ball (rather than a truck or some other toy, for example). This emphasis can be conveyed by placing the object at the beginning of the sentence and inverting the subject to follow the verb:

Einen Ball sucht das Kind.

(The child is looking for a ball.)

In addition, the object in first position carries heavy sentence stress.

Repeat the following German sentences, noticing the accusative object/verb/subject pattern and the intonation.

1. Den Wein trinken wir.  
(We are drinking the wine [not some other beverage].)
2. Eine Lehrerin grüsst er.  
(He greets a teacher [not some other person].)
3. Den Bleistift nimmt er.  
(He takes the pencil [not something else].)
4. Einen Schützen sehen wir.  
(We see a private [not some other person].)
5. Die Zeitung lesen sie.  
(They read the newspaper [not some other reading material].)

Say the following sentences so as to emphasize the underlined element.

1. Wir kennen die Dame.
2. Ich lese eine Zeitung.
3. Er findet ein Haus.
4. Wir treffen den Arzt.
5. Sie nimmt das Buch.

NOTES

Write the German so as to emphasize the underlined element.

1. He is asking a teacher. (fem.)

---

2. They look for the buddy.

---

3. I am reading a book.

---

4. We know the doctor.

---

5. She sees a waiter.

---

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. Eine Lehrerin fragt er.

---

2. Den Kameraden suchen sie.

---

3. Ein Buch lese ich.

---

4. Den Arzt kennen wir.

---

5. Einen Kellner sieht sie.

---

NOTES

START THE TAPE.

## LESSON 3

### "Kein" and Possessive Adjectives

The purpose of this lesson is to teach you the use of the German word "kein" and various forms of the possessive adjectives whose grammatical formation is similar to that of "kein."

### 1. The Use of "Kein"

In German, a form of the word kein is used before nouns to express the idea of "no," "not a," "not any." Study the following sentences:

1. Hier ist kein Schüler. (No student is here.)
2. Ich habe keinen Bleistift. (I don't have a pencil.)
3. Kein Auto ist hier. (There is no car here.)

How would you translate the sentence below?

4. Wir haben kein Telefon.

The form of kein varies depending on the gender of the noun to which it refers and the grammatical case in which the noun is being used, as shown on the following page.

Repeat the sentences below:

#### Nominative

Ein Mann wohnt hier.      Kein Mann wohnt hier.  
Eine Frau ist freundlich. Keine Frau ist freundlich.  
Ein Fenster ist hier.      Kein Fenster ist hier.

#### Accusative

Wir kennen einen Mann.      Wir kennen keinen Mann.  
Ich sehe eine Frau.      Ich sehe keine Frau.  
Er trinkt ein Bier.      Er trinkt kein Bier.

In all of the above sentences, the kein form follows the same pattern as the ein form. Since you have already studied the forms of ein in the nominative and accusative cases, you should easily be able to supply the correct form of kein in the same cases. Listen to each of the following sentences and repeat them, changing ein to kein:

1. Ich habe eine Tochter.
2. Hier wohnt eine Lehrerin.
3. Ein Fenster ist sauber.
4. Er liest ein Buch.
5. Ein Schüler trinkt Milch.
6. Hier ist ein Bleistift.
7. Sie hören ein Beispiel.
8. Sie sieht einen Schützen.

Say the entire German sentence, replacing the definite article with the proper form of kein.

1. Er kennt das Mädchen.
2. Hier ist die Zeitung.
3. Das Beispiel ist klar.
4. Er kauft das Auto.
5. Wir suchen das Restaurant.
6. Sie rauchen die Zigarre.
7. Die Familie wohnt dort.
8. Ich höre die Frage.
9. Der Schüler bleibt hier.
10. Er braucht den Tisch.
11. Das Kind ist müde.
12. Der Schüler ist reich.

NOTES

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of kein.

1. Sie liest \_\_\_\_\_ Buch.
2. Ich habe \_\_\_\_\_ Geld.
3. Er hat \_\_\_\_\_ Familie.
4. Das Haus hat \_\_\_\_\_ Garten.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Offizier ist hier.
6. Die Dame raucht \_\_\_\_\_ Zigarette.
7. Er sucht \_\_\_\_\_ Ball.
8. Sie sehen \_\_\_\_\_ Glas.
9. Er braucht \_\_\_\_\_ Zeitung.
10. Sie findet \_\_\_\_\_ Stuhl.
11. \_\_\_\_\_ Dame trinkt Bier.

Write the German.

1. I don't need a newspaper.
- 

2. She has no wine.
- 

3. No teacher (masc.) is reading the book.
- 

4. The waiter doesn't sell any beer.
- 

5. No family lives here.
- 

6. I don't have any money.
- 

7. The girl doesn't see a soldier.
- 

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. kein
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. kein
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. keine
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. keinen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Kein
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. keine
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. keinen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. kein
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. keine
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. keinen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 11. Keine

If you made any mistakes, write correctly the entire German sentence.

1. Ich brauche keine Zeitung.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Sie hat keinen Wein.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Kein Lehrer liest das Buch.

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Der Kellner verkauft kein Bier.

\_\_\_\_\_

5. Keine Familie wohnt hier.

\_\_\_\_\_

6. Ich habe kein Geld.

\_\_\_\_\_

7. Das Mädchen sieht keinen Soldaten.

\_\_\_\_\_

START THE TAPE.



## Section 2

### Possessive Adjectives

Your knowledge of the appropriate forms of ein and kein will help you to learn the correct use of the German possessive adjectives, which correspond to the English "my," "his," "her," "its," "our," and so forth.

We will first learn the basic form of the possessive adjectives and then practice adding the proper endings where needed.

Listen to and repeat the German words, noticing the English translation:

mein (my)	unser (our)
sein (his)	Ihr (your)
ihr (her)	ihr (their)
sein (its)	

Say the German for "her."

Say the German for "your."

Say the German for "their."

What do you notice about the sound of these three forms?

In written German, is it possible to distinguish any of these three forms from the others?

Stop the tape until you feel you know the possessive adjectives and their spelling. In the following exercises, you will be expected to produce the German forms on seeing the English equivalents.

Write the German.

1. their
2. his
3. our
4. its
5. your
6. my
7. her

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

NOTES

Write the German.

1. its
2. your
3. their
4. my
5. his
6. our
7. their
8. her
9. our
10. your
11. my
12. her
13. his
14. its

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

**NOTES**

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. ihr
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. sein
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. unser
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. sein
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Ihr
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. mein
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. ihr

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. sein
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. Ihr
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. ihr
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. mein
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. sein
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. unser
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. ihr
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. ihr
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. unser
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. Ihr
- \_\_\_\_\_ 11. mein
- \_\_\_\_\_ 12. ihr
- \_\_\_\_\_ 13. sein
- \_\_\_\_\_ 14. sein

START THE TAPE.

In actual language-use situations, you would never encounter mein, sein, (or any other possessive adjective) being used in isolation as we have done here for learning purposes. Instead, the possessive adjective will always be used with a noun, as in mein Vater ("my father") or sein Buch ("his book").

Depending on the gender of the noun and the case in which the noun is being used, German possessive adjectives may add certain endings. Thus, in a sentence such as Meine Mutter ist hier, the basic form mein becomes meine because it is used with a feminine noun in the nominative case.

Fortunately, it is quite easy to learn the appropriate possessive adjective endings because they are exactly the same as those used with ein and kein. Stop your tape recorder and study the table:

NOMINATIVE

Masculine

ein Tisch  
kein Tisch  
mein Tisch  
sein Tisch  
sein Tisch  
ihr Tisch  
unser Tisch  
Ihr Tisch  
ihr Tisch

(a table)  
(no table)  
(my table)  
(his table)  
(its table)  
(her table)  
(our table)  
(your table)  
(their table)

ACCUSATIVE

einen Tisch  
keinen Tisch  
meinen Tisch  
seinen Tisch  
seinen Tisch  
ihren Tisch  
unseren Tisch  
Ihren Tisch  
ihren Tisch

Feminine

eine Familie (a family, etc.)  
keine Familie  
meine Familie  
seine Familie  
seine Familie  
ihre Familie  
unsere Familie  
Ihre Familie  
ihre Familie

eine Familie  
keine Familie  
meine Familie  
seine Familie  
seine Familie  
ihre Familie  
unsere Familie  
Ihre Familie  
ihre Familie

Neuter

ein Haus (a house, etc.)  
kein Haus  
mein Haus  
sein Haus  
sein Haus  
ihr Haus  
unser Haus  
Ihr Haus  
ihr Haus

ein Haus  
kein Haus  
mein Haus  
sein Haus  
sein Haus  
ihr Haus  
unser Haus  
Ihr Haus  
ihr Haus

START THE TAPE.

**NOTES**

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the possessive adjective. Note that they are all in the nominative case.

1. His bedroom is clean.

\_\_\_\_\_ Schlafzimmer ist sauber.

2. Is her family here?

Ist \_\_\_\_\_ Familie hier?

3. My daughter is living in California.

\_\_\_\_\_ Tochter wohnt in Kalifornien.

4. Where is our waiter?

Wo bleibt \_\_\_\_\_ Kellner?

5. Does your classmate need money?

Braucht \_\_\_\_\_ Klassenkamerad Geld?

6. Is their mother coming soon?

Kommt \_\_\_\_\_ Mutter bald?

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the possessive adjective. Note that they are all in the nominative case.

1. My father is washing the car.

\_\_\_\_\_ Vater wäscht das Auto.

2. Is their bedroom cold?

Ist \_\_\_\_\_ Schlafzimmer kalt?

3. Your wife is healthy.

\_\_\_\_\_ Frau ist gesund.

4. Our child is coming tomorrow.

\_\_\_\_\_ Kind kommt morgen.

5. His Volkswagen is red.

\_\_\_\_\_ Volkswagen ist rot.

6. There is her book.

Dort ist \_\_\_\_\_ Buch.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Sein
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. ihre
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Meine
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. unser
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Ihr
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. ihre

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Mein
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. ihr
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Ihre
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Unser
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Sein
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. ihr

START THE TAPE.



Say complete German sentences, supplying the proper form of the possessive adjective and the noun.

1. Your letter is interesting.  
.... ist interessant.
2. His classmate's name is Otto.  
.... heisst Otto.
3. Our doctor is friendly.  
.... ist freundlich.
4. My mother is smoking a cigarette.  
.... raucht eine Zigarette.
5. Is your teacher (fem.) friendly?  
Ist .... Lehrerin freundlich?
6. Is her telephone broken?  
Ist .... kaputt?
7. Her friend (fem.) lives there.  
.... wohnt dort.
8. Is Mr. Frei their teacher?  
Ist Herr Frei ....?
9. His textbook is there.  
.... ist dort.
10. Their child is tired.  
.... ist müde.

11. My newspaper lies there.  
.... liegt dort.
12. Our living room is clean.  
.... ist sauber.

NOTES

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the possessive adjective. Note that they are all in the accusative case.

1. Franz and Ilse are selling their Volkswagen.

Franz und Ilse verkaufen \_\_\_\_\_ Volkswagen.

2. We drink our coffee.

Wir trinken \_\_\_\_\_ Kaffee.

3. He is looking for my neighbor.

Er sucht \_\_\_\_\_ Nachbarn.

4. The child drinks its milk.

Das Kind trinkt \_\_\_\_\_ Milch.

5. I see your picture.

Ich sehe \_\_\_\_\_ Bild.

6. She brings her glass.

Sie bringt \_\_\_\_\_ Glas.

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the possessive adjective as in the preceding exercise.

1. The man loves his wife.

Der Mann liebt \_\_\_\_\_ Frau.

2. I know their neighbor.

Ich kenne \_\_\_\_\_ Nachbarn.

3. The mother hears her daughter.

Die Mutter hört \_\_\_\_\_ Tochter.

4. We read our textbook.

Wir lesen \_\_\_\_\_ Lehrbuch.

5. They do not find my house.

Sie finden \_\_\_\_\_ Haus nicht.

6. I need your address.

Ich brauche \_\_\_\_\_ Adresse.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. ihren
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. unseren
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. meinen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. seine
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Ihr
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. ihr

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. seine
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. ihren
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. ihre
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. unser
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. mein
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Ihre

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, supplying the proper form of the possessive adjective and the noun.

1. The woman loves her husband.  
Die Frau liebt ....
2. I am looking for my textbook.  
Ich suche ....
3. He knows our school.  
Er kennt ....
4. Is she reading your book?  
Liest sie ....?
5. I use my telephone every day.  
Ich benutze .... jeden Tag.
6. We are looking for our friend.  
Wir suchen ....
7. The child goes and gets its pencil.  
Das Kind holt ....
8. They are doing their work.  
Sie machen ....
9. Today, he has his car here.  
Heute hat er .... hier.
10. They ask their father.  
Sie fragen . . . .

11. The lady drinks her coffee.

Die Dame trinkt ....

12. Do they know your teacher (fem.)?

Kennen sie ....?

NOTES

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the possessive adjective and the noun.

1. Her mother is old.

\_\_\_\_\_ ist alt.

2. Is their school new?

Ist \_\_\_\_\_ neu?

3. Is he bringing his book along today?

Bringt er heute \_\_\_\_\_ mit?

4. Are you looking for your car?

Suchen Sie \_\_\_\_\_ ?

NOTES

Write the German, filling in the blanks with the correct form of the possessive adjective and the noun.

1. Mrs. Meyer, your child is writing a letter.

Frau Meyer, \_\_\_\_\_ schreibt einen Brief.

2. Is she drinking her milk?

Trinkt sie \_\_\_\_\_ ?

3. My teacher (masc.) is writing a textbook.

\_\_\_\_\_ schreibt ein Lehrbuch.

4. They do not love their neighbor.

Sie lieben \_\_\_\_\_ nicht.

5. His beer is warm.

\_\_\_\_\_ ist warm.

6. We ask our teacher (fem.)

Wir fragen \_\_\_\_\_.

7. Our son is writing a book.

\_\_\_\_\_ schreibt ein Buch.

8. Your father knows my husband.

Ihr Vater kennt \_\_\_\_\_.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Ihre Mutter
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. ihre Schule
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. sein Buch
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Ihr Auto

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Ihr Kind
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. ihre Milch
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Mein Lehrer
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. ihren Nachbarn
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Sein Bier
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. unsere Lehrerin
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Unser Sohn
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. meinen Mann

START THE TAPE.

Say the German, filling in the blanks with the correct form of the possessive adjective and the noun.

1. Is your father coming soon?  
Kommt .... bald?
2. Mr. and Mrs. Kraus are selling their restaurant.  
Herr und Frau Kraus verkaufen ....
3. His book is not interesting.  
.... ist nicht interessant.
4. The doctor knows our family.  
Der Arzt kennt ....
5. Their daughter doesn't drink any water.  
.... trinkt kein Wasser.
6. Please ask your mother.  
Fragen Sie bitte ....
7. Her daughter lives here.  
.... wohnt hier.
8. Are you reading my newspaper?  
Lesen Sie ....?
9. He is bringing his chair.  
Er bringt ....

Write the German. Note that both kein forms and the possessive adjectives are called for.

1. I don't have a pencil.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. My neighbor has no money.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Is your mother reading my letter?  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Her kitchen has no window.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Their car is not a Volkswagen.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Our child knows his teacher (maso.) well.  
\_\_\_\_\_

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. Ich habe keinen Bleistift.

---

2. Mein Nachbar hat kein Geld.

---

3. Liest Ihre Mutter meinen Brief?

---

4. Ihre Küche hat kein Fenster.

---

5. Ihr Auto ist kein Volkswagen.

---

6. Unser Kind kennt seinen Lehrer gut.

---

START THE TAPE.

Say the German. Note that both kein forms and the possessive adjectives are called for.

1. No man sees her apartment.

2. His mother has no money.

3. My friend (masc.) does not find his pencil.

4. Our class has no teacher (fem.) today.

5. Their apartment has no window.

6. I know your neighbor.

7. Are you using my textbook?

8. His doctor has no telephone.

9. We don't eat any cake.

10. The lady has no car.

11. Our house has no garden.

NOTES



## LESSON 4

### Dative Case I

The general purpose of this lesson and of the next two lessons is to teach you the forms and uses of the German dative case.

In the present lesson, certain verbs which always require the dative case will be used to present the dative forms of the definite and indefinite articles, as well as the dative forms of kein and the possessive adjectives. In Lesson 5 you will learn the dative forms of the personal pronouns and the use of the dative case following certain prepositions which are said to "require the dative." Lesson 6 will deal with sentences in which both dative and accusative objects appear, and will practice the placement of these elements within the sentence.

### 1. Dative Case of the Definite Article

A convenient way of learning the dative case forms of the definite articles (and of the indefinite articles and the kein words, which follow the same pattern) is to study them in conjunction with certain verbs which are said to "require the dative." Danken is one of these verbs, as shown in the following sentences.

1. Ich danke dem Mann. I thank (am thanking) the man.
2. Ich danke der Frau. I thank (am thanking) the woman.
3. Ich danke dem Kind. I thank (am thanking) the child.

What is the dative form of the definite article when used with a masculine noun (as in sentence 1)?

What is the dative form of the definite article when used with a feminine noun?

What is the dative form of the definite article for neuter nouns?

Some of the important verbs which always require the dative, rather than the accusative case are given below. Study them a moment, then listen to and repeat the sentences in the exercise on the following page, paying particular attention to the definite article.

helfen	to help
danken	to thank
glauben	to believe
gehören	to belong to
antworten	to answer
gefallen	to like, to be pleasing to

1. Der Herr antwortet dem Schützen.\*  
(The gentleman answers the private.)
2. Sie helfen der Frau.  
(You are helping the woman.)
3. Der Ball gefällt dem Kind.\*\*  
(The child likes the ball. The ball is pleasing to the child.)
4. Er glaubt dem Mädchen.  
(He believes the girl.)

5. Ich danke der Dame.  
(I am thanking the lady.)
6. Das Haus gehört dem Lehrer.  
(The house belongs to the teacher.)

\* Note that the so-called "-n nouns" have the same ending in the dative case as they do in the accusative case.

\*\* The verb gefallen will be further analyzed in Section 4.

Say the following sentences, supplying the correct form of the definite article. For example:

You see: Er glaubt .... Freund.

You say: Er glaubt dem Freund.

1. Sie dankt .... Kellner.
2. Es gehört .... Dame.
3. Wir helfen .... Mutter.
4. Sie antwortet .... Kind.
5. Ich danke .... Lehrerin.
6. Sie glauben .... Mädchen.
7. Wir antworten.... Arzt.

Write the correct forms of the definite article.

1. Der Lehrer hilft \_\_\_\_\_ Schüler.
2. Das Buch gefällt \_\_\_\_\_ Lehrerin.
3. Der Herr dankt \_\_\_\_\_ Mädchen.
4. Der Offizier glaubt \_\_\_\_\_ Soldaten.
5. Die Schülerin antwortet \_\_\_\_\_ Lehrerin.
6. Das Haus gehört \_\_\_\_\_ Herrn.
7. Die Dame dankt \_\_\_\_\_ Offizier.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of the definite article.

1. Ich helfe \_\_\_\_\_ Lehrerin.
2. Sie glauben \_\_\_\_\_ Arzt.
3. Er antwortet \_\_\_\_\_ Herrn.
4. Wir helfen \_\_\_\_\_ Mädchen.
5. Sie dankt \_\_\_\_\_ Nachbarn.
6. Es gehört \_\_\_\_\_ Dame.
7. Er glaubt \_\_\_\_\_ Vater.

Write complete German sentences using the given elements. Begin your sentence with the first noun shown. For example:

You see: Mann/helfen/Freund.

You write: Der Mann hilft dem Freund.

1. Schülerin/glauben/Lehrer

- 
2. Mädchen/antworten/Vater

- 
3. Lehrer/helfen/Kind

- 
4. Schüler/danken/Lehrerin

- 
5. Ball/gefallen/Kind

- 
6. Schülerin/antworten/Lehrerin

- 
7. Buch/gehören/Dame
- 

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. dem
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. der
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. dem
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. dem
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. der
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. dem
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. dem

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. der
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. dem
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. dem
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. dem
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. dem
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. der
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. dem

If you made any mistakes, write correctly the entire German sentence.

1. Die Schülerin glaubt dem Lehrer.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Das Mädchen antwortet dem Vater.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Der Lehrer hilft dem Kind.

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Der Schüler dankt der Lehrerin.

\_\_\_\_\_

5. Der Ball gefällt dem Kind.

\_\_\_\_\_

6. Die Schülerin antwortet der Lehrerin.

\_\_\_\_\_

7. Das Buch gehört der Dame.

\_\_\_\_\_

START THE TAPE.

Section 2

Dative Case of the Indefinite Article

Listen and repeat:

1. Herr Meyer dankt einer Dame.
2. Der Ball gefällt einem Kind.
3. Das Kind hilft einer Frau.
4. Die Lehrerin antwortet einem Schüler.
5. Der Mann glaubt einem Freund.
6. Die Blume gehört einer Schülerin.

As you notice, the dative endings for the indefinite article are exactly the same as those for the definite article.

Say the following sentences, replacing the definite article in the dative case with the indefinite article.

1. Das Auto gehört dem Soldaten.
2. Das Mädchen hilft dem Schüler.
3. Das Buch gefällt der Lehrerin
4. Die Frau dankt dem Herrn.
5. Der Vater glaubt dem Freund.
6. Der Kellner antwortet der Dame.
7. Die Mutter dankt der Lehrerin.

Write the German. Note that both definite and indefinite articles are used.

1. The soldier answers an officer.

- 
2. The daughter believes a friend (fem.).

- 
3. A lady answers the gentleman.

- 
4. The father thanks the girl.

- 
5. The child likes the ball. (The ball is pleasing to the child.)

- 
6. The money belongs to a teacher (masc.).

- 
7. The man helps a neighbor.
- 

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the sentence correctly.

NOTES

1. Der Soldat antwortet einem Offizier.

---

2. Die Tochter glaubt einer Freundin.

---

3. Eine Dame antwortet dem Herrn.

---

4. Der Vater dankt dem Mädchen.

---

5. Der Ball gefällt dem Kind.

---

6. Das Geld gehört einem Lehrer.

---

7. Der Mann hilft einem Nachbarn.

---

START THE TAPE.

Section 3

Dative of "Kein" and the Possessive Adjectives

The word kein and the possessive adjectives follow the same pattern in the dative as do the definite and indefinite articles you have just studied. Thus, when used with a masculine or neuter noun, these words add -em. When used with a feminine noun, they add -er.

How would you say kein Arzt in the dative case?

How would you say sein Mädchen in the dative case?

How would you say unsere Schule in the dative case?

In the following exercises, we will practice the use of kein and the possessive adjectives after verbs which require the dative case.

**NOTES**

Say the following sentences, replacing the indefinite article by kein.

1. Der Mann dankt einem Kellner.
2. Das Buch gefällt einer Lehrerin.
3. Das Kind antwortet einer Dame.
4. Der Offizier hilft einem Mädchen.
5. Der Herr dankt einem Soldaten.
6. Das Mädchen glaubt einem Kind.
7. Der Brief gehört einem Schüler.

**NOTES**



Complete the sentences below by filling in the blanks with the correct form of the word in parentheses. Remember that the dative endings of possessive adjectives are the same as those used with the definite and indefinite articles you have already studied.

1. Der Schüler hilft \_\_\_\_\_ Lehrerin. (sein)
2. Der Offizier dankt \_\_\_\_\_ Freund. (mein)
3. Der Ball gehört \_\_\_\_\_ Kind. (unser)
4. Die Mutter glaubt \_\_\_\_\_ Tochter. (ihr)
5. Das Buch gefällt \_\_\_\_\_ Lehrerin. (kein)
6. Die Schülerin antwortet \_\_\_\_\_ Mutter. (unser)
7. Sie danken \_\_\_\_\_ Offizier. (ihr)

#### NOTES

Listen to each of the sentences below as it is spoken on the tape. Then repeat the sentence, substituting the words in parentheses. For example:

You see and hear: Die Dame hilft dem Soldaten.  
(mein Freund)

You say: Die Dame hilft meinem Freund.

1. Der Lehrer antwortet einem Schüler.  
(eine Schülerin)
2. Das Kind glaubt seiner Mutter. (kein Soldat)
3. Das Buch gefällt keinem Schüler. (unsere Lehrerin)
4. Der Vater hilft der Mutter. (sein Kind)
5. Die Wohnung gehört dem Fräulein. (ein Offizier)
6. Frau Huber glaubt ihrem Arzt. (ihre Tochter)
7. Der Schüler dankt meinem Freund. (seine Freundin)

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

NOTES

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. seiner
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. meinem
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. unserem
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. ihrer
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. keiner
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. unserer
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. ihrem

START THE TAPE.

NOTES

Write sentences using the given elements. For example:

You see: Schülerin/dankt/die Lehrerin.

You write: Die Schülerin dankt der Lehrerin.

Add noun endings where necessary.

1. Die Zeitung/gehört/der Arzt

---

2. Der Ball/gefällt/ein Kind

---

3. Der Lehrer/antwortet/sein Schüler

---

4. Die Tochter/hilft/ihre Mutter

---

5. Das Kind/gläubt/seine Lehrerin

---

6. Der Offizier/dankt/mein Freund

---

Write the German.

1. The daughter helps her mother.

---

2. The doctor believes the gentleman.

---

3. The house belongs to my father.

---

4. The lady thanks our teacher (fem.).

---

5. The soldier answers his girl friend.

---

6. The child likes the ball.

---

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the sentence correctly.

1. Die Zeitung gehört dem Arzt.

---

2. Der Ball gefällt einem Kind.

---

3. Der Lehrer antwortet seinem Schüler.

---

4. Die Tochter hilft ihrer Mutter.

---

5. Das Kind glaubt seiner Lehrerin.

---

6. Der Offizier dankt meinem Freund.

---

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. Die Tochter hilft ihrer Mutter.

---

2. Der Arzt glaubt dem Herrn.

---

3. Das Haus gehört meinem Vater.

---

4. Die Dame dankt unserer Lehrerin.

---

5. Der Soldat antwortet seiner Freundin.

---

6. Der Ball gefällt dem Kind.

---

START THE TAPE.

Section 4

"Schmecken" and "Gefallen"

A number of German verbs can be translated by the English "to like." Two of these are schmecken and gefallen, both of which require the dative. Schmecken is restricted to "like" in the sense of "tasting good," and usually refers to food, although it can be used with medicine, cigars, and other items which can be "tasted." For example:

Der Wein schmeckt meiner Mutter.  
(My mother likes the wine.)

Gefallen, on the other hand, is a more general term corresponding to "like" in the sense of "being pleased by" or "enjoying" persons, places, or things other than those covered by the "tasting" idea of schmecken. For example:

Das Haus gefällt seinem Vater.  
(His father likes the house.)

Both schmecken and gefallen have regular present tense forms, except that the "er, sie, es" form of gefallen has an umlaut, as shown in the preceding example.

Fill in the blanks with the proper form of schmecken or gefallen. Note also the English translations.

1. Das Haus \_\_\_\_\_ der Dame.  
(The lady likes the house.)
2. Das Bild \_\_\_\_\_ meinem Vater.  
(My father likes the picture.)
3. Das Auto \_\_\_\_\_ dem Schüler.  
(The student likes the car.)
4. Das Bier \_\_\_\_\_ ihrem Mann.  
(Her husband likes the beer.)
5. Die Wohnung \_\_\_\_\_ seinem Vater.  
(His father likes the apartment.)
6. Die Zigarette \_\_\_\_\_ meinem Lehrer.  
(My teacher likes the cigarette.)
7. Der Kaffee \_\_\_\_\_ der Frau.  
(The lady likes the coffee.)
8. Das Buch \_\_\_\_\_ unserer Mutter.  
(Our mother likes the book.)
9. Der Wein \_\_\_\_\_ dem Soldaten.  
(The soldier likes the wine.)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. gefällt
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. gefällt
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. gefällt
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. schmeckt
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. gefällt
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. schmeckt
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. schmeckt
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. gefällt
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. schmeckt

START THE TAPE.  
NOTES

In each of the preceding German sentences, you may have noticed that the "thing liked" is the subject of the German sentence and appears in the nominative case. The person who "does the liking" appears in the dative case. Thus, sentences such as the following are produced:

Der Kuchen schmeckt dem Schüler. (The student  
(nominative) (dative) likes the cake.)

Das Buch gefällt der Lehrerin. (The teacher  
(nominative) (dative) likes the book.)

To help you remember the case for each of the two elements of the sentence, you might think of schmecken as meaning "tasting good to (someone)" and gefallen as "being pleasing to (someone)". You could thus think of the above sentences as being translated:

The cake tastes good to the student. (Der Kuchen  
(nominative) (dative) schmeckt dem  
Schüler)

The book is pleasing to the teacher. (Das Buch ge-  
(nominative) (dative) fällt der  
Lehrerin.)

In the following exercises, you should write the proper German word for "like", but you may mentally use "tasting good to" and "being pleasing to" as a temporary aid.

Write the German.

1. Her father likes the Volkswagen.

---

2. My girl friend likes the coffee.

---

3. The girl likes the cake.

---

4. My mother likes the kitchen.

---

NOTES

Write the German.

1. Your teacher (masc.) likes the cake.

---

2. The gentleman likes the sports car.

---

3. My daughter likes the house.

---

4. Our child likes the milk.

---

5. His father likes the beer.

---

6. The officer likes the lady.

---

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. Der Volkswagen gefällt ihrem Vater.

---

2. Der Kaffee schmeckt meiner Freundin.

---

3. Der Kuchen schmeckt dem Mädchen.

---

4. Die Küche gefällt meiner Mutter.

---

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. Der Kuchen schmeckt Ihrem Lehrer.

---

2. Der Sportwagen gefällt dem Herrn.

---

3. Das Haus gefällt meiner Tochter.

---

4. Die Milch schmeckt unserem Kind.

---

5. Das Bier schmeckt seinem Vater.

---

6. Die Dame gefällt dem Offizier.

---

START THE TAPE.



Say the English.

1. Das Bild gefällt seiner Freundin.
2. Das Essen schmeckt meinem Vater.
3. Unsere Stadt gefällt dem Soldaten.
4. Die Zigarre schmeckt dem Arzt.
5. Die Milch schmeckt dem Mädchen.
6. Der Film gefällt unserer Mutter.
7. Der Garten gefällt seiner Freundin.
8. Das Wasser schmeckt dem Mann.
9. Der Wein schmeckt dem Kind nicht.
10. Das Zimmer gefällt meiner Lehrerin.
11. Der Kuchen schmeckt dem Mädchen.
12. Mein Haus gefällt dem Herrn.
13. Die Zigarette schmeckt dem Offizier.
14. Das Buch gefällt ihrer Schwester nicht.
15. Gefällt Ihrer Familie das Haus?

Rewrite the words in parentheses so that they will fit correctly into the sentences. Note that this and the following exercise review all of the material studied in this module.

1. Die Zeitschrift gefällt \_\_\_\_\_ Schülerin.  
(die)
2. Der Soldat hilft \_\_\_\_\_ Mädchen. (das)
3. Das Kind antwortet \_\_\_\_\_ Vater. (sein)
4. Die Dame glaubt \_\_\_\_\_ Arzt. (kein)
5. Der Lehrer hilft \_\_\_\_\_ Schüler. (ein)
6. Das Bier schmeckt \_\_\_\_\_ Freund. (mein)
7. Die Schülerin dankt \_\_\_\_\_ Freundin. (ihr)
8. Die Uhr gehört \_\_\_\_\_ Tochter. (unser)
9. Der Kuchen schmeckt \_\_\_\_\_ Vater. (Ihr)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

NOTES

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. der
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. dem
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. seinem
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. keinem
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. einem
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. meinem
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. ihrer
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. unserer
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. Ihrem

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, using the given elements.

- 1. die Frau/schmeckt/Wein
- 2. Ein Soldat/antwortet/sein Offizier
- 3. meine Freundin/gefällt/die Stadt
- 4. Dame/glaubt/ihr Arzt
- 5. Lehrer/hilft/sein Schüler
- 6. Mutter/dankt/unsere Lehrerin

## LESSON 5

### Dative Case II

The purpose of this lesson is to teach you the dative case of the personal pronouns and the use of the dative case following prepositions that require the dative.

### 1. Dative Case of the Personal Pronouns

As you know, it is very common in English (and in other languages as well) to use pronouns rather than nouns when the persons or things being described are clear from the context. For example, instead of saying "John is here," the speaker might say "He is here," or instead of saying "I see Bill and Mary," he might say "I see them."

You already know the forms of the German personal pronouns which are used in the nominative case, as shown in the following sentences:

1. Ich habe ein Buch.            I have a book.
2. Er sucht das Haus.            He is looking for the house.
3. Sie sieht den Mann.           She sees the man.
4. Es ist eine Blume.            It is a flower.
5. Wir lesen den Brief.           We are reading the letter.
6. Rauchen Sie eine  
Zigarre?                            Are you smoking a cigar?
7. Sie bleiben hier.                They are staying here.

In German, personal pronouns also have, in addition to the nominative case form, genitive, dative, and accusative case forms. The genitive and accusative case forms will be discussed in later modules. The formation and use of the dative case of personal pronouns will be practiced in the exercises that follow.

As you learned in Lesson 4, a certain group of German verbs is said to require or "take" the dative. Thus, in a sentence such as "She is helping her mother," the noun and the possessive adjective are both in the dative case because they follow helfen, one of the verbs that "take the dative": Sie hilft ihrer Mutter. If we were to replace the phrase "her mother" by the single pronoun "her" ("She is helping her."), we would have to put the pronoun "her" into the dative case: Sie hilft ihr.

Listen to and repeat the following German sentences, noticing the dative case pronouns and the English translations.

1. Das Buch gehört mir. The book belongs to me.
2. Der Offizier begegnet ihm. The officer meets him.
3. Das Auto gefällt ihr. She likes the car.  
[The car is pleasing to her.]
4. Der Vater hilft ihm. The father helps it.  
[the child]
5. Die Frau antwortet uns. The woman answers us.
6. Der Hund gehorcht Ihnen, Herr Schwarz. The dog obeys you, Mr. Schwarz.
7. Das Mädchen dankt ihnen. The girl thanks them.

Stop your tape and study the following table of personal pronouns and the preceding sentences until you feel you know these forms well.

<u>Nominative Case</u>	<u>Dative Case</u>
ich (I)	mir (me)
er (he)	ihm (him)
sie (she)	ihr (her)
es (it)	ihm (it)
wir (we)	uns (us)
Sie (you)	Ihnen (you)
sie (they)	ihnen (them)

START THE TAPE.

NOTES

Write the appropriate personal pronoun for the dative case noun.

1. Der Anzug gehört dem Lehrer.

Der Anzug gehört \_\_\_\_\_.

2. Die Frau dankt dem Soldaten.

Die Frau dankt \_\_\_\_\_.

3. Der Vater antwortet der Mutter.

Der Vater antwortet \_\_\_\_\_.

4. Die Dame hilft dem Kind.

Die Dame hilft \_\_\_\_\_.

5. Das Kind glaubt der Lehrerin.

Das Kind glaubt \_\_\_\_\_.

6. Der Kaffee schmeckt Hans und Ursula.

Der Kaffee schmeckt \_\_\_\_\_.

7. Die Wohnung gehört der Frau.

Die Wohnung gehört \_\_\_\_\_.

8. Der Film gefällt dem Mädchen.

Der Film gefällt \_\_\_\_\_.

Restate the following sentences, replacing all noun phrases with personal pronouns. For example:

You hear: Der Soldat dankt der Dame.

You say: Er dankt ihr.

1. Das Kind dankt dem Lehrer.

2. Die Frau glaubt ihrer Tochter.

3. Das Kind hilft seinem Vater.

4. Die Wohnung gehört meinem Vater und meiner Mutter.

5. Das Kind dankt der Lehrerin.

6. Das Auto gefällt dem Soldaten.

7. Der Wein schmeckt dem Schüler.

8. Das Kind antwortet der Dame.

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. ihm
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. ihm
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. ihr
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. ihm
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. ihr
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. ihnen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. ihr
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. ihm

START THE TAPE.

NOTES

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate dative case pronoun.

- 1. The apartment belongs to her.  
Die Wohnung gehört \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2. I like the girl.  
[The girl is pleasing to me.]  
Das Mädchen gefällt \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3. His father believes him.  
Sein Vater glaubt \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4. The child answers us.  
Das Kind antwortet \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5. You like Berlin.  
Berlin gefällt \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6. They like the beer.  
[The beer is pleasing to them.]  
Das Bier schmeckt \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7. Our friend believes her.  
Unser Freund \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8. The teacher thanks it [the child].  
Der Lehrer dankt \_\_\_\_\_.

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. ihr
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. mir
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. ihm
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. uns
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Ihnen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. ihnen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. ihr
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. ihm

START THE TAPE.

Earlier in the lesson, you learned the verb gehören as one of the verbs requiring the dative case: "Das Buch gehört mir." ("The book belongs to me."). Instead of saying "Das Buch gehört mir", you could also say: "Das ist mein Buch", "This is my book".

Complete each of the following sentences using the verb gehören with the proper dative case personal pronoun. Notice the change of word order. When you use gehören, the sentence begins with the noun. For example:

You see and hear: "Das ist sein Haus."

You say: "Das Haus gehört ihm."

1. Das ist Ihre Zeitung, Frau Müller.  
Die Zeitung ....., Frau Müller.

2. Das ist unsere Wohnung.

Die Wohnung .....

3. Das ist sein Garten.

Der Garten .....

4. Das ist mein Auto.

Das Auto .....

5. Das ist sein [the teacher's] Buch.

Das Buch .....

6. Das ist ihre [the lady's] Zigarette.

Die Zigarette .....

7. Das ist sein [the child's] Ball.

Der Ball .....

NOTES

Complete the sentences by filling in the appropriate pronouns. Remember that the personal pronoun has to agree with the noun it represents. For example:

Das ist unsere Lehrerin. Wir antworten ihr.

1. Das ist der Offizier. Der Soldat glaubt \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Das ist die Tochter. Die Mutter antwortet \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Das ist der Arzt. Der Mann dankt \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Das ist unser Haus. Es gehört \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Das ist mein Ball. Er gehört \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Das Kind hilft uns. Wir danken \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Das ist unsere Freundin. Sie gefällt \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Das ist Ihre Wohnung, Herr Müller. Sie gehört \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Da kommt Frau Meyer. Wir helfen \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Das ist unsere Zeitung. Sie gehört \_\_\_\_\_.

• CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. ihm
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. ihr
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. ihm
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. uns
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. mir
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. ihm
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. uns
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Ihnen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. ihr
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. uns

START THE TAPE.



It is a feature of German grammar that nouns or pronouns used with any preposition must be in one of the three cases: genitive, dative, or accusative (never the nominative). A certain number of prepositions are always followed by the dative form. The most important of these are shown below. Study these sentences and repeat the German in the pauses provided.

## Section 2

### Prepositions which Require the Dative

<u>aus</u>	out of, from	Er kommt aus dem Haus. (He is coming out of the house.)
<u>ausser</u>	except, except for	Er hat keine Freundin ausser mir. (He doesn't have any girl friend except for me.)
<u>bei</u>	with (in the sense of "at the location of")	Sie wohnt bei ihrer Freundin. (She is living with her girl friend.)  Ich esse heute bei meiner Mutter. (I'm eating today at my mother's.)
<u>mit</u>	with	Er schreibt mit dem Bleistift. (He is writing with the pencil.)

Here, "with" is used instrumentally; he writes "by means of the pencil."

Ich gehe mit meiner Schwester ins Kino.  
(I am going with my sister to the movies.) Here, "with" means "together with"; "my sister and I."

nach nach can express two different ideas:  
"after" in a temporal sense:

Er trinkt ein Bier nach der Arbeit.  
(He drinks a beer after work.)

and "to" or "toward" in a geographical sense, for names of places without the definite article (cities, states, countries, continents):

Er fährt nach Berlin.  
(He is traveling to Berlin.)

Sie fliegen nach Deutschland.  
(They are flying to Germany.)

seit "since" or "for", in a temporal sense:

Er wohnt seit drei Jahren in Berlin.  
(He has been living in Berlin for three years.)

Note that in sentences such as the above, German uses the present tense (literally, "He lives in Berlin for three years"), while the corresponding English sentence uses a progressive past tense ("has been living").

von from Das Kind kommt von dem Spielplatz.  
(The child is coming from the playground.)

about, Er spricht von uns.  
of (He is talking about us.  
He is speaking of us.)

zu to, toward

directional but  
nongeographic; for  
institutions,  
people and insti-  
tutional locations

Er geht zu der Bank.  
(die Bank)  
(He is going to the bank.)

Der Soldat geht zu seinem  
Offizier. (The soldier  
goes to his officer.)

Das Kind geht zu dem  
Picnick. (The child  
is going to the picnic.)

#### NOTES

Write the German.

1. to, toward  
(geographic) \_\_\_\_\_
2. except, except for \_\_\_\_\_
3. with (at the  
location of) \_\_\_\_\_
4. with \_\_\_\_\_
5. since, for  
(temporal sense) \_\_\_\_\_
6. out of, from \_\_\_\_\_
7. after (temporal  
sense) \_\_\_\_\_
8. from; about, of \_\_\_\_\_
9. to, toward  
(directional but  
nongeographic) \_\_\_\_\_

Say the German.

1. with
2. with (at the location of)
3. since, for (in a temporal sense)
4. to, toward (geographic)
5. except, except for
6. after (temporal sense)
7. out of, from
8. from; about, of
9. to, toward (directional but nongeographic)

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. nach
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. ausser
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. bei
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. mit
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. seit
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. aus
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. nach
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. von
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. zu

In Lesson 4 you learned the dative forms of the definite and indefinite articles and their use following certain VERBS such as glauben. For example: Er glaubt dem Freund (He believes the friend.)

We will now use these same dative forms of the definite and indefinite articles following the PREPOSITIONS you have just learned. Note that the so-called "n-accusative" nouns add -n or -en when used in the dative, just as when used in the accusative.

Thus, "with the soldier" would be translated:

"Except for the neighbor" would be translated:

NOTES

Complete the sentences by filling in the appropriate preposition and dative case article.

1. He is at the doctor's.

Er ist \_\_\_\_\_ Arzt.

2. She remains after the instruction.

Sie bleibt \_\_\_\_\_ Unterricht.

3. We are talking about a teacher.

Wir sprechen \_\_\_\_\_ Lehrerin.

4. No one drinks coffee except for the girl.

Niemand \_\_\_\_\_ Mädchen trinkt Kaffee.

5. They are coming out of the school.

Sie kommen \_\_\_\_\_ Schule.

6. He has been home since the weekend.

Er ist \_\_\_\_\_ Wochenende zu Hause.

7. I am coming with the child.

Ich komme \_\_\_\_\_ Kind.

8. She is going to a Bank.

Sie geht \_\_\_\_\_ Bank.

9. We are going to San Francisco.

Wir fahren \_\_\_\_\_ San Francisco.

Complete the sentences as in the previous exercise.

1. They have been here for a week.

Sie sind \_\_\_\_\_ Woche hier.

2. All have a question except the child.

Alle \_\_\_\_\_ Kind haben eine Frage.

3. My father is going to a doctor.

Mein Vater geht \_\_\_\_\_ Arzt.

4. We are working with a student.

Wir arbeiten \_\_\_\_\_ Schülerin.

5. She is going home after the movie.

Sie fährt \_\_\_\_\_ Kino nach Hause.

6. Her father is coming from [the] work.

Ihr Vater kommt \_\_\_\_\_ Arbeit.

7. They are eating at a friend's.

Sie essen \_\_\_\_\_ Freund.

8. The waiter is coming out of the restaurant.

Der Kellner kommt \_\_\_\_\_ Restaurant.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. bei dem
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. nach dem
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. von einer
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. ausser dem
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. aus der
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. seit dem
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. mit dem
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. zu einer
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. nach

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. seit einer
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. ausser dem
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. zu einem
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. mit einer
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. nach dem
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. von der
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. bei einem
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. aus dem

START THE TAPE.

NOTES

When followed by a definite article in the dative case (dem, der), some of the prepositions you have just studied are frequently combined with the definite article to form a single contracted word, especially in spoken German. Thus:

<u>bei dem</u>	becomes	<u>beim</u>
<u>von dem</u>	becomes	<u>vom</u>
<u>zu dem</u>	becomes	<u>zum</u>
<u>zu der</u>	becomes	<u>zur</u>

Study the above list until you feel that you know  
 1) which preposition + definite article combinations undergo a contraction, and 2) the correct form of the contraction.

Note that these contractions take place only with certain preposition + definite article combinations, never with any combination using an indefinite article. Thus:

Wir gehen zum Arzt. (We are going to the doctor's.)

but

Wir gehen zu einem Arzt. (We are going to a doctor.)

Say the German, using contracted forms wherever possible.

1. He is tired after the walk.  
Er ist .... Spaziergang müde.
2. She is at the neighbor's today.  
Sie ist heute .... Nachbarn.
3. I have been driving the Volkswagen for a week.  
Ich fahre den Volkswagen .... Woche.
4. No one except the lady speaks German.  
Niemand .... Dame spricht Deutsch.
5. They are coming from the movie theater.  
Sie kommen .... Kino.
6. We are going to [the] school.  
Wir gehen .... Schule.
7. She is coming out of a restaurant.  
Sie kommt .... Restaurant

**NOTES**



Fill in the blanks with the appropriate German, using contracted forms wherever possible.

1. The child is living at the mother's.

Das Kind wohnt \_\_\_\_\_ Mutter.

2. He is getting the newspaper from the teacher.

Er bekommt die Zeitung \_\_\_\_\_ Lehrer.

3. Our neighbor drives to [the] work.

Unser Nachbar fährt \_\_\_\_\_ Arbeit.

4. My husband is at the doctor's.

Mein Mann ist \_\_\_\_\_ Arzt.

5. They are coming from the garage.

Sie kommen \_\_\_\_\_ Garage.

6. Does your daughter go to [the] school?

Geht Ihre Tochter \_\_\_\_\_ Schule?

When the prepositions you have just learned are followed by kein or a possessive adjective (such as mein, sein, unser, Ihr, etc.) these forms must also be in the dative case. For example, "except for his mother" would be: ausser seiner Mutter.

Write the German.

1. He is coming out of his study.

Er kommt \_\_\_\_\_ Arbeitszimmer.

2. No one is in the kitchen except my mother.

Niemand \_\_\_\_\_ Mutter ist in der Küche.

3. We are going to our friend's soon.

Wir gehen bald \_\_\_\_\_ Freund.

4. They are staying at their daughter's.

Sie bleiben \_\_\_\_\_ Tochter.

5. Since her vacation she has been tired.

\_\_\_\_\_ Urlaub ist sie müde.

6. We are driving to Munich with your mother.

Wir fahren \_\_\_\_\_ Mutter nach München.

7. We don't take money from any student.

Wir nehmen \_\_\_\_\_ Schüler Geld.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. bei der
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. vom
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. zur
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. beim
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. von der
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. zur

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. aus seinem
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. ausser meiner
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. zu unserem
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. bei ihrer
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Seit ihrem
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. mit Ihrer
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. von keinem

START THE TAPE.

NOTES

As you have learned in this Lesson, certain prepositions are always followed by the dative case. Thus, in a sentence such as: Er kommt mit Herrn Schmidt, the noun object is in the dative case. If we were to replace Herrn Schmidt by a pronoun, we would also have to use the dative case: Er kommt mit ihm.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate pronoun.

1. The man is talking about them.

Der Mann spricht von \_\_\_\_\_.

2. She is living with us.

Sie wohnt bei \_\_\_\_\_.

3. They are studying with me.

Sie lernen mit \_\_\_\_\_.

4. All are here, except you, Mrs. Weber.

Alle ausser \_\_\_\_\_, Frau Weber, sind hier.

5. The letter is from him.

Der Brief ist von \_\_\_\_\_.

6. The child is going to her.

Das Kind geht zu \_\_\_\_\_.

Write the German. Use contracted forms whenever possible. Note that this and the following exercise review all of the material studied in this module.

1. The man is coming with his wife.

Er kommt \_\_\_\_\_ Frau.

2. She is coming from the movie theater.

Sie kommt \_\_\_\_\_ Kino.

3. Are you living with them?

Wohnen Sie \_\_\_\_\_?

4. They are going to the playground.

Sie gehen \_\_\_\_\_ Spielplatz.

5. I have known the girl since the evening in Berlin.

Ich kenne das Mädchen \_\_\_\_\_ Abend in Berlin.

6. All drink coffee except our father.

Alle \_\_\_\_\_ Vater trinken Kaffee.

7. He is buying the car from me.

Er kauft das Auto \_\_\_\_\_.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. ihnen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. uns
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. mir
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Ihnen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. ihm
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. ihr

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. mit seiner
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. vom
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. bei ihnen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. zum
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. seit dem
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. ausser unserem
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. von mir

START THE TAPE.

## LESSON 6

### Dative Case III

In this **Lesson**, you will learn to form German sentences which contain both dative and accusative noun objects. In addition, you will learn how the usual word order for sentences of this type can be changed in order to emphasize one or another of these objects.

### 1. Sentences with Dative and Accusative Noun Objects

In **Lesson 4**, you learned a number of verbs which are said to "require the dative" and which can in fact be accompanied only by a dative construction. For example:

Das Mädchen dankt dem Lehrer.

(The girl thanks the teacher.)

In **Lesson 5**, you practiced sentences which use the dative construction because of the presence of certain prepositions which also "require the dative."

A third and very common use of the dative case in German is to express indirect objects. A good way to identify indirect objects is to ask yourself whether the noun involved answers the question to whom or for whom something is being given, shown, brought, written, bought, etc. For example, in the English sentence

The pupil gives the teacher a book.

"the teacher" is the person to whom something is being given, and is thus an indirect object.

To express the same sentence in German requires use of the dative case:

Der Schüler gibt dem Lehrer ein Buch.

The direct object is the person or thing actually being given, shown, brought, written, bought, etc. What is the direct object in the English example sentence above?

## NOTES

"A book" is the direct object, because it is the thing actually being given. As you will remember from **lesson 2** (Accusative Case I), direct objects in German are expressed in the accusative case:

Der Schüler gibt dem Lehrer ein Buch.

It is often useful to speak of dative objects and accusative objects in German rather than indirect and direct objects, since this serves as a reminder of the case to be used.

Practice finding the accusative and dative objects in the following English sentences. Write ACC below the accusative object and DAT below the dative object, then turn the page to check your answers.

1. We are sending the boy a cake.
2. I am lending my sister the book.
3. Will you write your mother a letter?
4. She is giving our friend the money.
5. He is showing the gentleman a suitcase.

The correct answers are as follows:

1. We are sending the boy a cake.  
                  DAT       ACC
2. I am lending my sister the book.  
                  DAT       ACC
3. Will you write your mother a letter?  
                  DAT       ACC
4. She is giving our friend the money.  
                  DAT       ACC
5. He is showing the gentleman a suitcase.  
                  DAT       ACC

NOTES

We will now practice German sentences which contain both a dative and an accusative noun object. As in English, the usual word order is to have the dative noun object first, followed by the accusative noun object. Notice the parallel word order in these two sentences:

The mother is giving the child a book.

Die Mutter schenkt dem Kind ein Buch.  
                                  DAT       ACC

Before starting the exercises on the next page, you should review the proper forms of the dative and accusative cases of the definite and indefinite articles. Study the table below until you feel confident about these forms.

	<u>Masculine</u>	<u>Feminine</u>	<u>Neuter</u>
Dat.	dem/einem	der/einer	dem/einem
Acc.	den/einen	die/eine	das/ein

START THE TAPE.

Fill in the blanks with the proper form of the definite or indefinite article on the basis of the English sentence. For example:

You see: I show the girl a pencil.

You write: Ich zeige dem Mädchen einen Bleistift.

1. He brings the girl a cup of coffee.

Er bringt \_\_\_\_\_ Mädchen \_\_\_\_\_ Tasse  
Kaffee.

2. We lend the friend a book.

Wir leihen \_\_\_\_\_ Freund \_\_\_\_\_ Buch.

3. I am selling the man a car.

Ich verkaufe \_\_\_\_\_ Mann \_\_\_\_\_ Auto.

4. She gives the mother the clock.

Sie schenkt \_\_\_\_\_ Mutter \_\_\_\_\_ Uhr.

5. He lends the girl a dictionary.

Er leiht \_\_\_\_\_ Mädchen \_\_\_\_\_ Wörterbuch.

6. You are writing the doctor a letter.

Sie schreiben \_\_\_\_\_ Arzt \_\_\_\_\_ Brief.

7. We show the teacher a newspaper.

Wir zeigen \_\_\_\_\_ Lehrerin \_\_\_\_\_ Zeitung.

8. They give the soldier a cake.

Sie geben \_\_\_\_\_ Soldaten \_\_\_\_\_ Kuchen.

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

\_\_\_\_\_ 1. dem Mädchen eine Tasse  
Kaffee

\_\_\_\_\_ 2. dem Freund ein Buch

\_\_\_\_\_ 3. dem Mann ein Auto

\_\_\_\_\_ 4. der Mutter eine Uhr

\_\_\_\_\_ 5. dem Mädchen ein  
Wörterbuch

\_\_\_\_\_ 6. dem Arzt einen Brief

\_\_\_\_\_ 7. der Lehrerin eine  
Zeitung

\_\_\_\_\_ 8. dem Soldaten einen  
Kuchen

START THE TAPE.



Say the German, using the appropriate definite article in the first blank and the appropriate indefinite article in the second blank.

1. Wir geben .... Lehrerin .... Blume.
2. Er zeigt .... Mädchen .... Film.
3. Ich leihe .... Schüler .... Bleistift.
4. Sie schenken .... Dame .... Bild.
5. Sie schreibt .... Soldaten .... Brief.
6. Wir verkaufen .... Fräulein .... Zeitung.
7. Ich bringe .... Arzt .... Glas.
8. Er gibt .... Kind .... Kuchen.
9. Wir bringen .... Lehrer .... Wörterbuch.
10. Sie holen .... Herrn .... Glas Wein.

Thus far, we have been practicing sentences in which the noun objects are accompanied by definite or indefinite articles. We will now work with sentences in which one or both of the noun objects are accompanied by possessive adjectives, as in:

Er zeigt seinem Freund das Haus.

(He shows his friend the house.)

As with the definite and indefinite articles, the possessive adjectives must also be in the appropriate case.

Listen and repeat.

1. Sie schreibt ihrem Vater einen Brief.
2. Wir zeigen unserer Mutter unsere Wohnung.
3. Sie leihen Ihrer Freundin das Auto.
4. Er gibt seiner Tochter ein Bild.
5. Sie schenken ihrem Arzt einen Kuchen.
6. Ich verkaufe einem Lehrer meine Uhr.
7. Wir bringen unserem Offizier eine Zigarette.
8. Er gibt einem Kind seinen Ball.

Say the sentence, substituting the words in parentheses for the underlined words. For example:

You hear: Ich zeige meiner Mutter die Blume.  
(sein Kind)

You say: Ich zeige seinem Kind die Blume.

1. Wir schreiben unserer Mutter einen Brief. (unser Freund)

2. Sie schenken Ihrer Freundin eine Uhr. (meine Tochter)
3. Er verkauft seinem Vater das Auto. (Ihre Frau)
4. Sie zeigt ihrer Tochter ihr Buch. (mein Lehrer)
5. Ich gebe meinem Lehrer das Wörterbuch. (seine Lehrerin)
6. Sie bringen ihrem Arzt eine Zeitschrift. (mein Nachbar)
7. Er leiht meiner Tochter sein Wörterbuch. (Ihr Schüler)
8. Wir zeigen Ihrem Offizier die Wohnung. (unsere Freundin)

Say complete German sentences, replacing the underlined noun by the noun shown in parentheses. Make any necessary changes in the form of the article (and noun, in the case of "n-" nouns). Note that this exercise includes changes in either the dative object or the accusative object. For example:

You see and hear: Ich gebe der Mutter einen Brief.  
(Vater)

You say: Ich gebe dem Vater einen Brief.

OR

You see and hear: Ich gebe der Mutter einen Brief.  
(Blume)

You say: Ich gebe der Mutter eine Blume.

1. Wir zeigen dem Lehrer ein Bild. (Soldat)

2. Er schreibt der Freundin einen Brief. (Mädchen)
3. Wir bringen der Mutter eine Zeitung. (Glas)
4. Er schenkt der Tochter einen Bleistift. (Schüler)
5. Ich zeige der Frau den Brief. (Mädchen)
6. Sie gibt dem Soldaten einen Kuchen. (Bleistift)
7. Er verkauft dem Fräulein ein Auto. (Zeitung)
8. Sie leihen der Dame das Lehrbuch. (Schüler)
9. Er verkauft der Frau eine Uhr. (Volkswagen)
10. Sie bringen der Mutter eine Tasse. (Fräulein)
11. Wir holen dem Herrn den Brief. (Zigarre)
12. Sie bringen dem Vater eine Zigarre. (Wörterbuch)
13. Wir zeigen dem Kind die Schule. (Lehrer)
14. Ich leihe dem Klassenkameraden das Geld.  
(Wörterbuch)
15. Sie geben der Lehrerin einen Kuchen. (Brief)

Write the German.

1. You give the lady a flower.

---

2. We show a friend (masc.) our house.

---

3. I sell my teacher (fem.) my car.

---

4. He gives a child a cake.

---

5. She lends her teacher (masc.) her dictionary.

---

6. They write the soldier a letter.

---

7. We bring our father a newspaper.

---

8. He gives the girl a picture. (as a present)

---

9. She gets the lady a pencil.

---

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. Sie geben der Dame eine Blume.

---

2. Wir zeigen einem Freund unser Haus.

---

3. Ich verkaufe meiner Lehrerin mein Auto.

---

4. Er gibt einem Kind einen Kuchen.

---

5. Sie leiht ihrem Lehrer ihr Wörterbuch.

---

6. Sie schreiben dem Soldaten einen Brief.

---

7. Wir bringen unserem Vater eine Zeitung.

---

8. Er schenkt dem Mädchen ein Bild.

---

9. Sie holt der Dame einen Bleistift.

---

START THE TAPE.

## Section 2

### Word Order for Emphasis

In the preceding section, you practiced using sentences which have both a dative noun object and an accusative noun object. In regard to word order, you followed the rule that the dative noun object comes before the accusative noun object.

This "dative-first" rule is useful and common. However, you should be prepared to hear or read occasional "exceptions" to the rule which occur when the speaker or writer wishes to emphasize one of the objects. Consider the following sentence:

We give the teacher the book.

Wir geben dem Lehrer das Buch.  
          DAT          ACC

This German sentence follows the usual dative-first word order you have been practicing. Now suppose that the speaker wished to emphasize the person to whom the book is being given, that is, to emphasize the dative object. In English, this emphasis could be provided by placing speaking stress on the emphasized object (We give the teacher the book), or by placing the emphasized element in a prepositional phrase at the end of the sentence:

We give the book to the teacher.

There are similar possibilities for emphasis in German. German dative objects can be emphasized through spoken stress (while keeping normal dative-first word order), as in sentences such as:

Wir geben dem Lehrer das Buch.

Alternatively, as in English, the dative object can be emphasized by placing it at the end of the sentence or clause. HOWEVER, since the dative case form in and of itself conveys the notion of "to," "for," etc., the German construction does NOT use a preposition. Thus,

We give the book to the teacher.

would be expressed in German by:

Wir geben das Buch dem Lehrer.

NOT: zum Lehrer.

Say the German sentence so as to emphasize the underlined element through spoken stress, using normal word order.

1. Er bringt dem Lehrer die Blume.
2. Sie schenken Ihrer Mutter die Uhr.
3. Ich bringe einem Kind den Ball.
4. Er zeigt einer Schülerin seine Wohnung.
5. Sie gibt ihrem Freund das Bild.
6. Ich leihe meiner Tochter das Buch.

Say the complete German sentence, putting the underlined element at the end of the clause for emphasis.

1. Wir verkaufen einem Nachbarn unser Auto.
2. Sie geben Ihrer Freundin die Blume.
3. Er zeigt einer Dame sein Haus.
4. Sie bringen dem Soldaten den Kuchen.
5. Sie gibt ihrer Tochter die Milch.
6. Ich schenke meinem Kameraden das Buch.

There is a third, very common, technique by which one of the noun objects in a German sentence may be emphasized; it is this technique which we will discuss and practice below.

In **Lesson 2**, you learned that it was possible to emphasize noun accusative objects by placing the emphasized element at the beginning of the sentence, the verb immediately following it, and the subject immediately after the verb. Thus, a sentence such as:

Er besucht seine Schwester in Berlin.  
(He is visiting his sister in Berlin.)

could be rephrased as:

Seine Schwester besucht er in Berlin.  
(He is visiting his sister in Berlin.)

The same technique can be used with sentences having both a noun dative and a noun accusative object. For example, the sentence:

1. Der Lehrer gibt dem Schüler ein Buch.  
SUBJECT                      DATIVE                      ACCUSATIVE  
(The teacher gives the student a book.)

could be rephrased as:

2. Dem Schüler gibt der Lehrer ein Buch.  
DATIVE                      SUBJECT                      ACCUSATIVE  
(The teacher gives the student a book.)

Note that sentence 2 above does NOT mean "The student gives the teacher a book," as the German word order might lead you to assume. This is a common error, and you can guard against it by carefully listening to the form of the definite or indefinite article preceding each noun. Thus, in sentence 2, the dative case form of the definite article preceding Schüler (Dem Schüler ....) tells you immediately that you are dealing with a dative object that has been placed at the beginning of the sentence for emphasis.

In dealing with sentences of this type, it may be helpful for you to think of the German sentence as saying literally:

"To the student the teacher gives a book."

On the basis of the above discussion, how would you rephrase:

Der Kellner gibt dem Herrn ein Glas Bier.  
(The waiter is giving the gentleman a glass of beer.)

in order to emphasize the fact that the beer is being given to the gentleman?

You would say:

Dem Herrn gibt der Kellner ein Glas Bier.  
(The waiter is giving the gentleman a glass of beer.)

The above example shows a dative object being placed at the beginning of the sentence for emphasis. Now consider the situation where an accusative object is emphasized. How would you rephrase:

Der Lehrer gibt dem Schüler ein Buch.  
(The teacher gives the student a book.)

in order to emphasize the fact that a book is being given?

You would say:

Ein Buch gibt der Lehrer dem Schüler.  
(The teacher gives the student a book.)

Note that the emphasized element (dative or accusative object) is always placed immediately before the verb, and that the subject of the sentence immediately follows the verb. If you wish, stop your tape to study this technique further before beginning the exercises on the next page.

Translate orally into English. Observe the case endings carefully in order not to be misled by the German word order.

1. Das Bild schenken wir der Mutter.
2. Dem Soldaten gibt sie ein Buch.
3. Der Tochter bringt sie ein Glas Milch.
4. Den Kuchen gebe ich dem Schüler.
5. Dem Arzt schreiben Sie einen Brief.
6. Die Uhr verkauft er der Schülerin.
7. Der Familie zeigen wir die Wohnung.
8. Dem Vater bringen wir eine Zigarre.

NOTES

Say the German, beginning the sentence with the underlined element.

1. Wir schenken dem Kind das Buch.
2. Er gibt seiner Tochter ein Auto.
3. Ich schreibe dem Soldaten einen Brief.
4. Sie zeigen Ihrer Freundin das Bild.
5. Sie bringt ihrer Tochter die Zeitung.
6. Wir verkaufen unser Haus einem Arzt.
7. Sie leihen ihrer Mutter den Volkswagen.
8. Ich schenke meiner Frau eine Uhr.

Say the German, using "emphasized-element-first" word order to stress the dative object. For example,

You see: Ich bringe meinem Vater eine Zigarette.

You say: Meinem Vater bringe ich eine Zigarette.

1. Ich gebe meiner Mutter eine Blume.
2. Sie zeigt ihrer Tochter ein Bild.
3. Wir bringen unserer Lehrerin ein Buch.
4. Sie zeigen Ihrer Freundin einen Film.
5. Er schreibt dem Arzt einen Brief.
6. Sie schenkt dem Soldaten eine Uhr.
7. Wir leihen dem Schüler unser Wörterbuch.

8. Ich verkaufe dem Offizier meinen Volkswagen.

Write the German, beginning the sentence with the underlined element.

1. He lends the pencil to his classmate.
- 

2. The girl brings the dictionary to the teacher (fem.).
- 

3. The soldier gives the girl a flower.
- 

4. We go and get a cake for our mother.
- 

5. The student lends his classmate the textbook.
- 

6. They are showing the film to their teacher (fem.).
- 

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

**NOTES**

1. Seinem Klassenkameraden leiht er den Bleistift.

---

2. Der Lehrerin bringt das Mädchen das Wörterbuch.

---

3. Dem Mädchen gibt der Soldat eine Blume.

---

4. Unserer Mutter holen wir einen Kuchen.

---

5. Seinem Klassenkameraden leiht der Schüler das Lehr

---

6. Ihrer Lehrerin zeigen sie den Film.

---

START THE TAPE.



## LESSON 7

### Separable Prefixes and Imperative Forms

This lesson will help you learn the present tense forms of a number of separable prefix verbs and the word order which they follow within complete sentences. You will also learn the so-called imperative forms of verbs, which are used by German speakers in making requests and giving commands.

Listen to and repeat the following German sentences, noticing the English translations:

1. Der Soldat geht mit dem Mädchen aus.  
(The soldier is going out with the girl.)
2. Das Mädchen holt ihren Freund ab.  
(The girl picks up [calls for] her friend.)
3. Der Lehrer macht das Fenster zu.  
(The teacher closes the window.)

Each of the above sentences ends with a short word that looks like a preposition. These words are actually part of the verbs used in these sentences, and are called separable prefixes since they are separated from the main verb when used in the present tense and certain other tenses. The infinitive forms of these verbs are:

ausgehen	(go out)
abholen	(pick up, call for)
zumachen	(close)

When separated from the main part of the verb, the separable prefix moves to the end of the sentence or clause, as shown in the examples above.

Listen to and repeat the following sentences, noticing the English translations:

1. Ich fahre nach Carmel mit.  
(I am going along to Carmel [with someone].)
2. Bringen Sie bitte das Buch mit!  
(Please bring the book along with you.)
3. Der Soldat holt seine Freundin ab.  
(The soldier is picking up his girl friend.)
4. Warum machen Sie nicht die Tür zu?  
(Why don't you close the door?)

Now listen again to each of the sentences and say the infinitive of the verb used.

We will now practice several exercises using separable prefixes.

Study these separable prefix verbs, repeating the German infinitives and example sentences in the pauses provided.

annehmen - accept	Ich <u>nehme</u> die Einladung gern <u>an</u> . (I gladly accept the invitation.)	zurückgeben - give back	Sie <u>geben</u> dem Lehrer das Buch <u>zurück</u> . (You give the book back to the teacher.)
einladen - invite	Er <u>lädt</u> sie zu einem Glas Wein <u>ein</u> . (He is inviting her for a glass of wine.)	mitkommen - come along	Wir <u>kommen</u> morgen <u>mit</u> . (We are coming along tomorrow.)
aufgeben - give up	Wir <u>geben</u> das Rauchen <u>auf</u> . (We give up smoking.)	einschenken - pour (something)	Sie <u>schenken</u> den Kaffee <u>ein</u> . (They are pouring the coffee.)
anbieten - offer	Er <u>bietet</u> der Dame eine Zigarette <u>an</u> . (He offers the lady a cigarette.)	ausgehen - go out	Heidi <u>geht</u> morgen <u>aus</u> . (Heidi is going out tomorrow.)
abholen - pick up, call for	Er <u>holt</u> seine Freundin <u>ab</u> . (He gets [picks up] his girl friend.)	aufschreiben - write down	Franz <u>schreibt</u> die Adresse <u>auf</u> . (Franz is writing down the address.)
mitbringen - bring along	Sie <u>bringen</u> das Buch <u>mit</u> . (They bring the book along.)	aufmachen - open	Ich <u>mache</u> das Fenster <u>auf</u> . (I open the window.)
mitnehmen - take along	Sie <u>nehmen</u> nicht genug Geld <u>mit</u> . (They don't take enough money along.)		
mitfahren - drive along, go along	Sie <u>fährt</u> nach Köln <u>mit</u> . (She goes along to Cologne.)		

zurückfahren - drive  
back

Der Schüler fährt  
Schule zurück.  
(The student dri-  
to school.)

zurückkommen - come  
back

Sie kommen um fünf Uhr  
zurück.  
(They are coming back at  
five o'clock.)

zumachen - close

Der Lehrer macht die Tür zu.  
(The teacher is closing  
the door.)

Stop your tape if you wish to study these verbs  
further.

#### NOTES

Write the German.

1. give up \_\_\_\_\_
2. bring along \_\_\_\_\_
3. pour (something) \_\_\_\_\_
4. pick up, call for \_\_\_\_\_
5. come along \_\_\_\_\_
6. invite \_\_\_\_\_
7. take along \_\_\_\_\_
8. drive along, go along \_\_\_\_\_
9. accept \_\_\_\_\_
10. give back \_\_\_\_\_
11. offer \_\_\_\_\_

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. aufgeben
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. mitbringen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. einschenken
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. abholen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. mitkommen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. einladen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. mitnehmen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. mitfahren
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. annehmen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. zurückgeben
- \_\_\_\_\_ 11. anbieten

START THE TAPE.

Say the German.

1. bring along
2. come back, return
3. invite
4. give up
5. come along
6. pick up, call for
7. pour (something)
8. accept
9. drive along, go along
10. offer
11. give back

NOTES

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the  
in parentheses.

1. Sie [she] \_\_\_\_\_ Kaffee \_\_\_\_\_  
(einschenken).
2. Hans, Fritz und Maria \_\_\_\_\_ vom Kino  
\_\_\_\_\_ (zurückkommen).
3. Der Lehrer \_\_\_\_\_ die Adresse \_\_\_\_\_  
(aufschreiben).
4. Sie [you] \_\_\_\_\_ Ihre Zeitung \_\_\_\_\_  
(mitbringen).
5. Das Kind \_\_\_\_\_ den Ball \_\_\_\_\_  
(zurückgeben).
6. Er \_\_\_\_\_ seine Freundin \_\_\_\_\_  
(einladen).
7. Die Mutter \_\_\_\_\_ das Kind von der Schule  
\_\_\_\_\_ (abholen).
8. Ich \_\_\_\_\_ die Tür nicht \_\_\_\_\_  
(aufmachen).

Say the entire German sentence, incorporating the  
appropriate form of the verb in parentheses.

1. Ich .... die Einladung gern .... (annehmen)
2. Wir .... die Adresse .... (aufschreiben)
3. Herr und Frau Meyer .... morgen abend ....  
(ausgehen)
4. Wir .... unseren Freund .... (abholen)
5. Ich .... mein Wörterbuch .... (mitbringen)
6. Das Mädchen .... in unserem Auto nach Berlin ....  
(mitfahren)
7. Müllers .... ihren Nachbarn zum Essen .... (einladen)
8. Wir .... dem Kind das Buch .... (zurückgeben)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the entire sentence.

1. Sie schenkt Kaffee ein.

---

2. Hans, Fritz und Maria kommen vom Kino zurück.

---

3. Der Lehrer schreibt die Adresse auf.

---

4. Sie bringen Ihre Zeitung mit.

---

5. Das Kind gibt den Ball zurück.

---

6. Er lädt seine Freundin ein.

---

7. Die Mutter holt das Kind von der Schule ab.

---

8. Ich mache die Tür nicht auf.

---

Say the entire German sentence, incorporating the appropriate form of the verb in parentheses.

1. Mein Klassenkamerad .... das Feuerzeug ....  
(mitbringen)

2. Das Mädchen .... heute abend .... (ausgehen)

3. Der Kamerad .... wieder .... (mitkommen)

4. Ich .... ein Glas Milch .... (einschenken)

5. Sie [they] .... im Auto .... (mitfahren)

6. Ich .... meine Freundin .... (abholen)

7. Der Schüler .... das Wörterbuch .... (zurückgeben)

START THE TAPE

Write a complete German sentence, using the given elements.

1. He is inviting his girl friend for a glass

Er/einladen/seine Freundin/zu einem Glas Wein

---

2. My father and his friend are driving back to San Francisco tomorrow.

Vater und sein Freund/zurückfahren/morgen/nach San Francisco

---

3. We are coming along tonight.

Wir/mitkommen/heute abend

---

4. The girl is offering us a glass of water.  
Mädchen/anbieten/uns/ein Glas Wasser
- 

5. His wife does not like to go out.

Frau/ausgehen/nicht gern

---

6. Her teacher brings the dictionary along.

Lehrer/mitbringen/das Wörterbuch

---

Say the entire German sentence, incorporating the verb in parentheses.

1. Wir (aufgeben) morgen bestimmt das Rauchen.

2. Ich (mitfahren) im Auto.

3. Der Schüler (mitbringen) das Lehrbuch.

4. Er (ausgehen) samstags immer.

5. Herr und Frau Meyer (abholen) ihr Kind von der Schule.

6. Der Kellner (einschenken) ein Glas Bier..

7. Die Schülerin (zumachen) das Fenster.

8. Wir (aufschreiben) den Satz.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. Er lädt seine Freundin zu einem Glas Wein ein.

---

2. Mein Vater und sein Freund fahren morgen nach  
San Francisco zurück.

---

3. Wir kommen heute abend mit.

---

4. Das Mädchen bietet uns ein Glas Wasser an.

---

5. Seine Frau geht nicht gern aus.

---

6. Ihr Lehrer bringt das Wörterbuch mit.

---

Say the German, using the separable prefix verbs  
you have been studying.

1. I am coming back.

2. He likes to go out.

3. She comes along.

4. We are driving back.

5. You go (drive) along.

NOTES



Write the German, using verbs with separable prefixes.

1. They are accepting the invitation.

---

2. The father goes (drives) along to Berlin.

---

3. The mother pours her daughter the milk.

---

4. The officer offers the lady a cigarette.

---

5. We always like to come along.

---

6. The girl closes the window.

---

7. The soldier gives back the textbook.

---

8. They are giving up [the ] smoking.

---

9. The student (masc.) brings the dictionary along.

---

10. The teacher (fem.) goes (drives) along to the bank.

---

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German sentence.

1. Sie nehmen die Einladung an.

---

2. Der Vater fährt nach Berlin mit.

---

3. Die Mutter schenkt ihrer Tochter die Milch ein.

---

4. Der Offizier bietet der Dame eine Zigarette an.

---

5. Wir kommen immer gern mit.

---

6. Das Mädchen macht das Fenster zu.

---

7. Der Soldat gibt das Lehrbuch zurück.

---

8. Sie geben das Rauchen auf.

---

9. Der Student bringt das Wörterbuch mit.

---

10. Die Lehrerin fährt zur Bank mit.

---

START THE TAPE.

NOTES

Say the German, using the separable prefix verbs you have been studying.

1. He offers the lady a cigarette.
2. She brings the book along.
3. I am pouring coffee.
4. She picks up her girl friend.
5. We are inviting you to dinner.
6. They don't like to go out.
7. I go (drive) along to Berlin.
8. They give back the pencil.
9. Are you giving up [the] smoking?
10. I bring the newspaper along.

All of the preceding exercises used verbs with separable prefixes. There are a number of verbs whose prefixes cannot be separated in this manner, and which are used in present and past tenses just like ordinary verbs. For example, consider the inseparable prefix verb verkaufen. How would you say "He sells the car."?

You should have said "Er verkauft das Auto."

Ordinarily, the "non-separable" prefixes are those which cannot exist by themselves; for example, there is no word such as ver (from the verb above). However, there are exceptions even to this rule, and it is therefore necessary for you to learn by rote whether a given verb has a separable or inseparable prefix.

It should be noted that a separable prefix is always stressed in the verb infinitive form, whereas a non-separable prefix is unstressed.

#### NOTES

## Section 2

### Imperative Forms

In this section, we will learn the way in which German speakers form the so-called imperative construction, that is to say, how they express requests, orders, and commands. Notice the following English imperative sentences and the corresponding German construction.

Write the letter!	Schreiben Sie den Brief!
Bring the newspaper!	Bringen Sie die Zeitung!

Greet the teacher (masc.)! Grüßen Sie den Lehrer!

What element appears in each of these German imperative constructions which does not appear in the corresponding English sentence?

The German imperative constructions contain the pronoun Sie. This pronoun always appears in formal German imperatives and is preceded by a verb form which is identical to the infinitive. (There is also a familiar form of the German imperative, which you will study in **Lesson 11**.)

Study the following sentences:

1. Sie bleiben zu Hause.  
(You are staying home.)
2. Bleiben Sie zu Hause?  
(Are you staying home?)
3. Bleiben Sie zu Hause!  
(Stay home!)

What do you notice about the word order used in sentences 2 and 3?

Look at the German sentence, then say the sentence, changing it into the imperative form. For example,

You see: Sie bringen der Mutter das Buch.

You say: Bringen Sie der Mutter das Buch!

1. Sie holen das Bild.
2. Sie nehmen mein Wörterbuch.
3. Sie öffnen das Fenster.
4. Sie geben Ihrer Tochter Geld.
5. Sie schreiben dem Soldaten einen Brief.
6. Sie suchen das Kind.
7. Sie fragen die Mutter.
8. Sie besuchen Ihren Vater.
9. Sie gehen gleich nach Hause.
10. Sie zeigen Ihrem Vater das Bild.

The word order in both sentences is exactly the same. How can you tell from the printed sentences which is a question and which is a command?

Since the question marks and exclamation points cannot be heard, how is the distinction between questions and commands made in spoken German?

Repeat the following questions, being careful to use rising intonation.

1. Fahren Sie nach Deutschland? (Are you going to Germany?)
2. Helfen Sie der Mutter? (Are you helping the mother?)
3. Öffnen Sie das Fenster? (Are you opening the window?)
4. Trinken Sie ein Glas Bier? (Are you drinking a glass of beer?)  
(Idiomatically, "Would you like a glass of beer?")
5. Gehen Sie ins Kino? (Are you going to the movie?)

Now we will practice the same sentences in the imperative form. Notice the falling intonation.

1. Fahren Sie nach Deutschland! (Go to Germany!)
2. Helfen Sie der Mutter! (Help the mother!)
3. Öffnen Sie das Fenster! (Open the window!)

4. Trinken Sie ein Glas Bier! (Drink a glass of beer!)

5. Gehen Sie ins Kino! (Go to the movie!)

Using the words listed, write a complete German sentence in the imperative form.

Note: Place the underlined word last. For example,

You see: in die Wohnung/gehen/schnell

You write: Gehen Sie schnell in die Wohnung!

1. die Tür/öffnen/jetzt

---

2. zur Bank/laufen/gleich

---

3. in die Stadt/fahren/jetzt

---

4. den Satz/lesen/laut

---

5. die Zeitung/bringen/dem Herrn

---

6. ihm/das Buch/geben

---

7. das/sagen/nicht

---

Listen to and repeat the German, noting the English translation.

1. Beginnen Sie mit der Arbeit!  
(Start to work!)
2. Rauchen Sie hier nicht!  
(Don't smoke here!)
3. Verkaufen Sie dem Arzt das Auto!  
(Sell the car to the doctor!)
4. Danken Sie dem Mann!  
(Thank the man!)
5. Fragen Sie Ihre Mutter!  
(Ask your mother!)
6. Geben Sie mir die Zeitung!  
(Give me the newspaper!)
7. Helfen Sie Ihrem Kameraden!  
(Help your buddy!)

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. Öffnen Sie jetzt die Tür!

---

2. Laufen Sie gleich zur Bank!

---

3. Fahren Sie jetzt in die Stadt!

---

4. Lesen Sie den Satz laut!

---

5. Bringen Sie dem Herrn die Zeitung!

---

6. Geben Sie ihm das Buch!

---

7. Sagen Sie das nicht!

---

As in English, German imperative sentences often involve the possessive adjective "your" (German *Ihr*): which takes the same endings as the other "kein-" words you have studied.

Do your work!	Machen Sie Ihre Arbeit!
Help your officer!	Helfen Sie Ihrem Offizier!
Take your dictionary!	Nehmen Sie Ihr Wörterbuch!

Listen and repeat.

1. Besuchen Sie Ihre Lehrerin!
2. Trinken Sie Ihren Kaffee!
3. Rauchen Sie Ihre Zigarre nicht hier!
4. Geben Sie mir Ihr Buch!
5. Zeigen Sie mir Ihre Wohnung!
6. Helfen Sie Ihrem Vater!
7. Nehmen Sie Ihren Bleistift!

Write the German.

1. Open your window!
- 

2. Sell your car!
- 

3. Don't drive so fast!
- 

4. Go and get your book!
- 

5. Ask your father!
- 

6. Show me your picture!
- 

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. Öffnen Sie Ihr Fenster!

---

2. Verkaufen Sie Ihr Auto!

---

3. Fahren Sie nicht so schnell!

---

4. Holen Sie Ihr Buch!

---

5. Fragen Sie Ihren Vater!

---

6. Zeigen Sie mir Ihr Bild!

---

START THE TAPE.

Say the entire German sentence corresponding to the English sentence.

1. Drink your beer !

.... Ihr Bier!

2. Visit your friend!

.... Ihren Freund!

3. Lend me your car!

.... Ihr Auto!

4. Greet your neighbor!

.... Ihren Nachbarn!

5. Write [to] your girl friend!

.... Ihrer Freundin!

NOTES



Write the German.

1. Come with me!

---

2. Drink your coffee!

---

3. Don't talk so much!

---

4. Open the book!

---

5. Thank your officer!

---

6. Help the man!

---

7. Take your dictionary!

---

8. Go home!

---

9. Don't speak to him!

---

10. Sell your car!

---

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

START THE TAPE.

The word bitte ("please") is often added to German commands or requests in order to make them less abrupt or demanding.

Bitte may either be the first sentence element, or it may be placed within the sentence. For example:

Bitte öffnen Sie die Tür!  
(Please open the door!)

Helfen Sie bitte dem Kind!  
(Please help the child!)

Less frequently, and for emphasis only, bitte appears at the end of the sentence, in which case it is preceded by a comma:

Stören Sie mich nicht, bitte!  
(Do not disturb me, please!)

Say complete German sentences on the basis of the given English.

1. Please open the door!
2. Go to the bank!
3. Write to the soldier!
4. Please help my friend!
5. Please bring me a glass of water!
6. Go and get the pencil!
7. Please look for the cigarette lighter!
8. Give her the money!
9. Go home!
10. Please show me the apartment!

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. Kommen Sie mit mir!

---

2. Trinken Sie Ihren Kaffee!

---

3. Reden Sie nicht so viel!

---

4. Öffnen Sie das Buch!

---

5. Danken Sie Ihrem Offizier!

---

6. Helfen Sie dem Mann!

---

7. Nehmen Sie Ihr Wörterbuch!

---

8. Gehen Sie nach Hause!

---

9. Sprechen Sie nicht mit ihm!

---

10. Verkaufen Sie Ihr Auto!

---

Section 3

Imperative Forms of Separable Prefix Verbs

In the first section of this lesson, you studied declarative sentences with separable prefix verbs, such as:

Sie kommen heute abend mit. (You'll come along tonight.)

Sie schenken ein Glas Milch ein. (You are pouring a glass of milk.)

On the basis of what you have just learned in the preceding section, you should be able to determine how the above sentences would be rendered in the imperative form. Say the German corresponding to:

Come along tonight!

You should have said:

Kommen Sie heute abend mit!

As you notice, the separable prefix stays at the end of the phrase or sentence in imperative constructions, just as it does in declarative sentences. We will now practice imperative forms with a number of separable prefix verbs.

Fill in the blanks with the imperative form of the verb in parentheses.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ das Rauchen \_\_\_\_\_!  
(aufgeben)
2. \_\_\_\_\_ mir ein Glas Bier \_\_\_\_\_!  
(einschenken)
3. \_\_\_\_\_ nachher Ihren Freund \_\_\_\_\_!  
(abholen)
4. \_\_\_\_\_ um fünf Uhr \_\_\_\_\_!  
(zurückkommen)
5. \_\_\_\_\_ den Satz \_\_\_\_\_!  
(aufschreiben)
6. \_\_\_\_\_ die Zeitschrift \_\_\_\_\_!  
(mitbringen)
7. \_\_\_\_\_ das Wörterbuch \_\_\_\_\_!  
(zurückgeben)
8. \_\_\_\_\_ ihm eine Zigarette \_\_\_\_\_!  
(anbieten)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. Geben Sie das Rauchen auf!

---

2. Schenken Sie mir ein Glas Bier ein!

---

3. Holen Sie nachher Ihren Freund ab!

---

4. Kommen Sie um fünf Uhr zurück!

---

5. Schreiben Sie den Satz auf!

---

6. Bringen Sie die Zeitschrift mit!

---

7. Geben Sie das Wörterbuch zurück!

---

8. Bieten Sie ihm eine Zigarette an!

---

START THE TAPE.

Look at the German sentence, then say the sentence, changing it into the imperative form. For example,

You see: Sie geben das Rauchen auf.

You say: Geben Sie das Rauchen auf!

1. Sie schenken den Wein ein.

2. Sie machen jetzt die Tür zu.

3. Sie geben das Geld nicht zurück.

4. Sie laden den Lehrer ein.

5. Sie gehen mit dem Mädchen aus.

6. Sie bringen Ihre Frau mit.

7. Sie bieten der Dame eine Zigarette an.

8. Sie holen Ihre Tochter ab.

NOTES

Using the words listed, say a complete German sentence in the imperative form.

1. Ihre Freundin/abholen
2. das Geld/zurückgeben
3. ein Glas Bier/einschenken
4. den Satz/ aufschreiben
5. mit der Dame/ausgehen
6. das Fenster/zumachen
7. das Buch/mitbringen
8. nach Berlin/zurückfahren

NOTES

Write the German, using the separable prefix verbs you have been studying.

1. Pour the coffee! [Omit the definite article in the German sentence.]

---

2. Write down the word quickly!

---

3. Bring wine along!

---

4. Give up smoking!

---

5. Drive back to Berlin!

---

6. Please pick me up!

---

7. Bring your wife along!

---

8. Take your girl friend out! (use ausgehen)

---

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

NOTES

1. Schenken Sie Kaffee ein!

---

2. Schreiben Sie das Wort schnell auf!

---

3. Bringen Sie Wein mit!

---

4. Geben Sie das Rauchen auf!

---

5. Fahren Sie nach Berlin zurück!

---

6. Bitte, holen Sie mich ab!

---

7. Bringen Sie Ihre Frau mit!

---

8. Gehen Sie mit Ihrer Freundin aus!

---

START THE TAPE.

Accusative Case II

In this Lesson you will study and practice the following grammatical features of German:

1. prepositions that take the accusative only
2. prepositions that can take either the accusative or the dative
3. contracted forms of some of the above prepositions
4. the use of the personal pronouns in the accusative case to replace noun accusative objects.

1. Prepositions Which Take the Accusative Only

In Lesson 5, you studied a number of prepositions (aus, ausser, bei, mit, nach, seit, von, zu) that are used only with the dative case. German also has a number of prepositions that are always followed by the accusative case. These are:

durch, für, gegen, ohne, um

To avoid mistakes, you must know which case a given preposition requires and, of course, the gender of the noun.

The following practice frames will help you learn the "accusative-only" prepositions and their usage.

durch	-	through, by, throughout
für	-	for
gegen	-	against, opposed to

ohne	-	without
um	-	around, about, at

Listen to and repeat the German, noticing the English translations.

1. Das Mädchen geht durch den Garten.  
(The girl is walking through the garden.)
2. Die Frau dankt dem Herrn für die Uhr.  
(The woman thanks the gentleman for the watch.)
3. Der Schüler ist gegen das Rauchen.  
(The student is opposed to smoking.)
4. Ohne das Buch lernt der Schüler kein Deutsch.  
(The student won't learn any German without the book.)
5. Das Kind läuft um das Haus.  
(The child is running round [the outside of] the house.)
6. Das Mädchen fährt durch eine Stadt.  
(The girl is driving through a city.)
7. Das Auto fährt gegen ein Haus.  
(The car crashes against a house.)
8. Ich danke meinem Freund für seinen Brief.  
(I thank my friend for his letter.)
9. Ohne ihren Mann fliegt sie nicht nach Deutschland.  
(She won't fly to Germany without her husband.)
10. Unser Lehrer wohnt um die Ecke.  
(Our teacher lives around the corner.)

Supply the German!

1. for \_\_\_\_\_
2. against, opposed to \_\_\_\_\_
3. through, by, throughout \_\_\_\_\_
4. around, about, at \_\_\_\_\_
5. without \_\_\_\_\_

START THE TAPE.

Say the German, replacing the underlined words by the ones given in parentheses. Remember that these prepositions require the accusative case.

1. Das Kind läuft durch das Haus. (die Wohnung)
2. Ohne seine Zigarre arbeitet der Offizier nicht gern. (sein Kaffee)
3. Das Kind läuft gegen den Tisch. (die Lampe)
4. Der Vater gibt mir Geld für das Kino. (der Urlaub)
5. Das Auto fährt um den Spielplatz. (die Ecke)
6. Der Schüler hat etwas gegen den Lehrer. (der Unterricht)
7. Der Ball fliegt durch das Zimmer. (das Fenster)

Say the entire German sentence.

1. He drives to Paris without his father.  
Er fährt .... nach Paris.
2. We buy a cake for our teacher (fem.).  
Wir kaufen einen Kuchen ....
3. He drives [with the car] through the city.  
Er fährt mit dem Auto ....
4. The doctor lives around the corner.  
Der Arzt wohnt ....
5. The neighbor walks through his garden.  
Der Nachbar geht ....
6. The daughter is opposed to a walk.  
Die Tochter hat etwas ....
7. The mother goes and gets a ball for the child.  
Die Mutter holt einen Ball ....
8. He does not come without his girl friend.  
Er kommt nicht ....



Write complete German sentences, using the given elements in the order in which they appear.

1. Flugzeug/fliegen/durch/Luft

---

2. Lehrerin/sein/gegen/Film

---

3. Mann/arbeiten/für/mein Vater

---

4. Mutter/sein/gegen/Rauchen

---

5. Familie/sitzen/um/Tisch

---

6. Mann/bekommen/Geld/für/seine Arbeit

---

7. Dame/fahren/durch/Stadt

---

8. Er/gehen/ohne/sein Buch/zur Schule

---

Fill in the blanks on the basis of the given English.

1. You learn German without a book.

Sie lernen \_\_\_\_\_ Deutsch.

2. I am against the movie.

Ich habe etwas \_\_\_\_\_.

3. We are taking a walk through the town.

Wir machen einen Spaziergang \_\_\_\_\_.

4. His girl friend lives around the corner.

Seine Freundin wohnt \_\_\_\_\_.

5. I don't have anything against your friend.

Ich habe nichts \_\_\_\_\_.

6. The waiter runs through the restaurant.

Der Kellner läuft \_\_\_\_\_.

7. The gentleman goes and gets a chair for the lady.

Der Herr holt einen Stuhl \_\_\_\_\_.

8. Does he come without his child?

Kommt er \_\_\_\_\_ ?

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write correctly the entire German sentence.

1. Das Flugzeug fliegt durch die Luft.

2. Die Lehrerin ist gegen den Film.

3. Der Mann arbeitet für meinen Vater.

4. Die Mutter ist gegen das Rauchen.

5. Die Familie sitzt um den Tisch.

6. Der Mann bekommt Geld für seine Arbeit.

7. Die Dame fährt durch die Stadt.

8. Er geht ohne sein Buch zur Schule.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. ohne ein Buch

2. gegen den Film

3. durch die Stadt

4. um die Ecke

5. gegen Ihren Freund

6. durch das Restaurant

7. für die Dame

8. ohne sein Kind

Section 2

Prepositions Which Can Take  
Dative or Accusative Case

In addition to the "dative-only" and "accusative-only" prepositions which you have studied, there is a third group of prepositions which can be followed by either the accusative case or the dative case, depending on their meaning in a given sentence. Study the following list until you feel you know both the German spelling and the common English meanings of these nine "either-case" prepositions.

an	- at, close to, to, on
auf	- on, upon
hinter	- behind
in	- in, into
neben	- next to
über	- over, above, about
unter	- under, underneath
vor	- in front of, before
zwischen	- between

Write the German.

1. in \_\_\_\_\_
2. over, above, about \_\_\_\_\_
3. between \_\_\_\_\_
4. on, upon \_\_\_\_\_
5. under, underneath \_\_\_\_\_
6. behind \_\_\_\_\_
7. at, close to, to, on \_\_\_\_\_
8. next to \_\_\_\_\_
9. in front of, before \_\_\_\_\_

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. in
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. über
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. zwischen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. auf
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. unter
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. hinter
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. an
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. neben
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. vor

START THE TAPE.

Say the German.

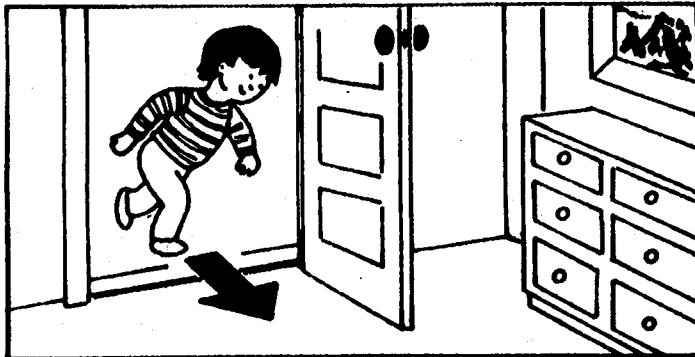
1. under, underneath
2. in front of, before
3. over, above, about
4. behind
5. at, close to, to, on
6. in, into
7. on, upon
8. next to
9. between

NOTES

With all of the "either-case" prepositions, the accusative case is used to indicate motion with a particular destination. The dative case is used whenever there is NO motion involved or if the motion is NOT toward a particular destination. Consider the following sentence which shows the accusative case use:

1. Das Kind rennt in das Zimmer. (The child runs into the room.)  
ACCUSATIVE

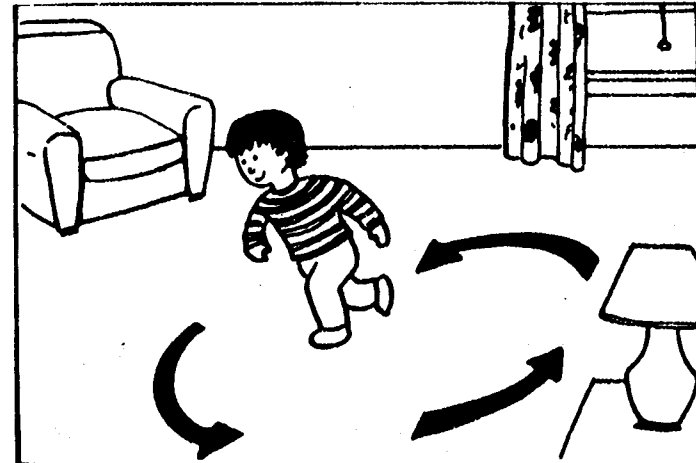
In the above sentence, we have the image of a child—originally standing outside the room—running into the room, with the destination being that of going into the room itself. The action could be indicated schematically as follows:



For the two dative case uses, consider sentences 2 and 3, below:

2. Das Kind sitzt in dem Zimmer. (The child is sitting in the room.)  
DATIVE
3. Das Kind rennt in dem Zimmer. (The child runs [around] inside the room.)  
DATIVE

In both sentences, the preposition in is followed by the dative case. In sentence 2, no motion is involved. In sentence 3, a certain motion is involved, but this is motion without a particular destination, indicated schematically as follows:



As a further example, consider the following two sentences:

1. Das Flugzeug fliegt über die Stadt. (Accusative)  
(The airplane is flying over the city.)
2. Das Flugzeug fliegt über der Stadt. (Dative)  
(The airplane is flying [around] above the city.)

In the first sentence, the implication is that the airplane is flying over the city in a straight line, with the destination being to pass beyond the city.

In the second sentence, the image is that of a plane which is circling or hovering over the city, with no fixed destination implied and no crossing of a borderline (all of the motion takes place within the confines of the city itself). Thus, the dative is used.

Listen to and repeat the following sentences. In each case, note that the first sentence of the pair uses the dative case because there is no motion with direction involved. The second sentence uses the accusative case because motion toward a destination is involved.

1. Der Freund steht an der Tür.  
(The friend is standing at the door.)  
Die Mutter geht an die Tür.  
(The mother goes to [towards] the door.)

2. Die Tasse steht auf dem Tisch.  
(The cup is on the table.)  
Ich stelle die Tasse auf den Tisch.  
(I place the cup on the table.)

3. Das Auto steht hinter dem Haus.  
(The car is standing behind the house.)  
Er fährt das Auto hinter das Haus.  
(He drives the car behind the house.)

4. Der Lehrer ist in dem Klassenzimmer.  
(The teacher is in the classroom.)  
Der Lehrer geht in das Klassenzimmer.  
(The teacher goes into the room.)

5. Die Lampe steht neben dem Sofa.  
(The lamp is next to the sofa.)

Wir stellen die Lampe neben das Fenster.  
(We put the lamp next to the window.)

6. Das Flugzeug ist über der Schule.  
(The airplane is over [above] the school.)

Das Flugzeug fliegt über die Schule.  
(The airplane is flying over the school.)

7. Das Buch liegt unter der Zeitung.  
(The book is lying under the newspaper.)

Sie legt das Buch unter die Zeitung.  
(She puts the book under the newspaper.)

8. Die Zeitung liegt vor der Tür.  
(The newspaper is lying in front of the door.)

Er legt die Zeitung vor die Tür.  
(He puts the newspaper in front of the door.)

9. Das Sofa steht zwischen der Tür und dem Fenster.  
(The sofa stands between the door and the window.)

Wir stellen das Sofa zwischen die Tür und das Fenster.

(We put the sofa down between the door and the window.)

Say the entire sentence, supplying the correct form of the definite article.

1. Die Dame steht zwischen .... Vater und .... Tochter.
2. Ich fahre den Volkswagen vor .... Restaurant.
3. Das Kind sitzt unter .... Tisch.
4. Hängen Sie die Lampe über .... Tisch?
5. Die Frau legt die Zeitung neben .... Buch.
6. Die Kinder spielen in .... Schule.
7. Die Uhr hängt über .... Eingang.
8. Wir legen den Bleistift auf .... Pult.
9. Der Lehrer stellt den Stuhl an .... Wand.

Fill in the blanks on the basis of the English sentence.

1. I am standing between the teacher (masc.) and the student (fem.).  
Ich stehe \_\_\_\_\_.
2. He meets his girl friend in front of the movie theater.  
Er trifft seine Freundin \_\_\_\_\_.

3. The child runs under the table.

Das Kind läuft \_\_\_\_\_.

4. The airplane is over our house right now.

Das Flugzeug ist gerade \_\_\_\_\_.

5. She puts the newspaper next to the glass.

Sie legt die Zeitung \_\_\_\_\_.

6. The children play in the room.

Die Kinder spielen \_\_\_\_\_.

7. I put the lamp on my table.

Ich stelle die Lampe \_\_\_\_\_.

8. She hangs the picture on the wall.

Sie hängt das Bild \_\_\_\_\_.

9. The airplane is flying over [across] the city.

Das Flugzeug fliegt \_\_\_\_\_.

10. The airplane is flying over [hovering over] the city.

Das Flugzeug fliegt \_\_\_\_\_.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. zwischen dem Lehrer und der Studentin

\_\_\_\_\_

2. vor dem Kino

\_\_\_\_\_

3. unter den Tisch

\_\_\_\_\_

4. über unserem Haus

\_\_\_\_\_

5. neben das Glas

\_\_\_\_\_

6. in dem Zimmer

\_\_\_\_\_

7. auf meinen Tisch

\_\_\_\_\_

8. an die Wand

\_\_\_\_\_

9. über die Stadt

\_\_\_\_\_

10. über der Stadt

\_\_\_\_\_

NOTES



Write complete sentences using the given elements.

1. Tasse/stehen/auf/Tisch

---

2. wir/gehen/in/Kino

---

3. Lehrer/stellen/Stuhl/an/Wand

---

4. Kind/spielen/hinter/Haus

---

5. wir/stellen/Tisch/neben/Sofa

---

6. ich/stellen/Stuhl/vor/Tür

---

7. Schüler/legen/Lehrbuch/unter/Stuhl

---

8. Stuhl/stehen/zwischen/Tisch/und/Wand

---

9. Flugzeug/fliegen/Über/Stadt/nach Berlin

---

Write the German.

1. The soldier is standing beside his girl friend.

---

2. Mr. Meyer is going into his study.

---

3. The child puts the ball behind the sofa.

---

4. The coffee is on the table.

---

5. The picture is hanging on the wall.

---

6. The sky above our house is blue.

---

7. The ball is under the sofa.

---

8. We drive the car in front of (up to) the restaurant.

---

9. He parks his car between the bank and the school.

---

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. Die Tasse steht auf dem Tisch.

---

2. Wir gehen in das Kino.

---

3. Der Lehrer stellt den Stuhl an die Wand.

---

4. Das Kind spielt hinter dem Haus.

---

5. Wir stellen den Tisch neben das Sofa.

---

6. Ich stelle den Stuhl vor die Tür.

---

7. Der Schüler legt das Lehrbuch unter den Stuhl.

---

8. Der Stuhl steht zwischen dem Tisch und der Wand.

---

9. Das Flugzeug fliegt über die Stadt nach Berlin.

---

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. Der Soldat steht neben seiner Freundin.

---

2. Herr Meyer geht in sein Arbeitszimmer.

---

3. Das Kind legt den Ball hinter das Sofa.

---

4. Der Kaffee ist auf dem Tisch.

---

5. Das Bild hängt an der Wand.

---

6. Über unserem Haus ist der Himmel blau.

---

7. Der Ball ist unter dem Sofa.

---

8. Wir fahren das Auto vor das Restaurant.

---

9. Er parkt seinen Wagen zwischen der Bank und der Schule.

---

### Section 3

#### Contracted Forms of Some Prepositions

As discussed in **Lesson 5**, there are several prepositions in German that can be contracted with the following definite article into a new and shorter form, provided that the article is not stressed. Study the following list, and repeat the contracted form (only) in the pause provided.

#### Prepositions + Dative Articles

an dem	becomes	am
bei dem		beim
hinter dem		hintern
in dem		im
über dem		übern
unter dem		untern
von dem		vom
vor dem		vorn
zu dem		zum
zu der		zur

#### Prepositions + Accusative Articles

durch das	becomes	durchs
für das		fürs
um das		ums
an das		ans
auf das		aufs
hinter das		hinters
in das		ins
über das		übers
unter das		unters
vor das		vors

Stop the tape and study each contracted form and the preposition + article combination from which it is derived.

START THE TAPE.

You may even hear:

hintern	for	hinter den
übern		über den
untern		unter den

Of all these contracted forms, am (an dem), ans (an das), im (in dem), beim (bei dem), ins (in das), vom (von dem), zum (zu dem), and zur (zu der) are the most frequently used.

However, when in Germany, you will notice that German speakers (especially in the southern half of the country) use all the contracted forms frequently in conversational and colloquial speech. You should therefore learn to recognize these forms when you hear them spoken.

Say the sentences, substituting the contracted form of the preposition + article.

1. Die Dame sitzt an dem Tisch.
2. Sie geht in das Wohnzimmer.
3. Ein Stuhl steht in dem Wohnzimmer.
4. Das Kind läuft durch das Zimmer.
5. Die Milch hier ist für das Kind.
6. Der Schüler steigt auf das Dach.
7. Er steht jetzt an dem Fenster.
8. Wir stellen einen Stuhl unter das Bild.

Say the sentences, using the full form of the preposition and article.

1. Der Soldat läuft durchs Wasser.
2. Das Auto fährt vors Restaurant.
3. Er kauft Schokolade fürs Mädchen.
4. Die Dame legt das Buch aufs Sofa.
5. Der Brief liegt beim Buch.
6. Der Schüler geht oft ins Kino.
7. Sie findet einen Brief im Buch.
8. Das Kind läuft ans Wasser.

## Section 4

### Accusative Case of the Personal Pronouns

You have already learned that dative case pronouns can be used either when an indirect object is involved, as for example:

Sie gibt ihm das Buch. (She gives him the book.)

or when the phrase contains a preposition which requires the dative. For example:

Er geht mit mir zur Schule. (He goes to school with me.)

In this section, we will learn the accusative case forms of the personal pronouns, which we will use in situations where a direct object is involved, as for example:

Ich sehe ihn. (I see him.)

or when the phrase contains a preposition which requires the accusative. Compare the nominative and accusative pronoun forms shown in the list below:

<u>Nominative</u>		<u>Accusative</u>	
ich	(I)	mich	(me)
Sie	(you)	Sie	(you)
er	(he)	ihn	(him)
sie	(she)	sie	(her)
es	(it)	es	(it)
wir	(we)	uns	(us)
sie	(they)	sie	(them)

Study this list until you feel you know the proper accusative case pronoun for each of the grammatical persons. Remember that the grammatical gender of the noun determines the gender of the pronoun. Bear in mind that the English "it" becomes respectively ihn, sie, es for the indirect object pronoun. The plural "them" equivalent is sie, regardless of the gender of the underlying noun.

Listen to and repeat the sentences, noticing the English translations.

1. Meine Freundin sieht mich jeden Tag.  
(My girl friend sees me every day.)
2. Die Dame kennt Sie, Herr Müller.  
(The lady knows you, Mr. Müller.)
3. Der Lehrer trifft uns im Kino.  
(The teacher meets us in the movie.)
4. Wir sehen den Himmel.  
(We see the sky.)  
Wir sehen ihn.  
(We see it.)
5. Der Tourist sucht das Restaurant.  
(The tourist is looking for the restaurant.)  
Er sucht es.  
(He is looking for it.)
6. Das Kind trinkt die Milch.  
(The child drinks the milk.)  
Das Kind trinkt sie.  
(The child drinks it.)

7. Der Schüler liebt das Mädchen.  
(The student loves the girl.)

Der Schüler liebt es.  
(The student loves her.)

8. Ich kenne Herrn und Frau Meyer gut.  
(I know Mr. and Mrs. Meyer well.)

Ich kenne sie gut.  
(I know them well.)

Say the following sentences, replacing the noun object by the corresponding pronoun object in the accusative case. For example:

You hear: Der Mann holt das Auto.

You say: Der Mann holt es.

1. Der Tourist sucht das Restaurant.
2. Wir sehen den Soldaten.
3. Der Lehrer braucht den Bleistift.
4. Die Dame liebt das Kind.
5. Der Soldat schreibt den Brief.
6. Ich sehe Herrn und Frau Müller.
7. Wir bringen die Lampe.
8. Der Herr liest die Zeitung.
9. Der Vater holt den Stuhl.

10. Der Schüler trifft das Mädchen.

11. Das Kind trinkt die Milch.

Say the sentence, replacing the underlined noun object with a pronoun or by filling in the correct form.

1. Der Offizier kennt den Soldaten.

2. Wir hören unsere Mutter.

3. Der Schüler stellt das Tonbandgerät auf den Tisch.

4. Sie treffen Herrn Müller und sagen: "Ich kenne ...." (I know you.)

5. Ich treffe Herrn Müller und er fragt: "Kennen Sie .... nicht?" (Don't you know me?)

6. Hans und Peter fragen ihren Lehrer: Verstehen Sie .... nicht?" (Don't you understand us?)

7. Der Arzt besucht Herrn Müller und seine Frau.

8. Der Nachbar kennt das Kind.

Answer the following questions in the affirmative, using personal pronouns. For example:

You hear: Kennen Sie Herrn Meyer?

You say: Ja, ich kenne ihn.

1. Haben Sie das Geld?
2. Lieben Sie Ihre Freundin?
3. Sehen Sie Ihren Lehrer?
4. Besuchen Sie Hans und Inge?
5. Kennen Sie mich?
6. Schütze Braun, kennt Herr Meyer Sie?
7. Suchen Sie uns, Herr Müller?
8. Kennt der Offizier Sie [plur.]?

Translate aloud into German, replacing the noun object with the appropriate pronoun.

1. We drink the milk.
2. The child is looking for his father and mother.
3. The soldier sees his buddy.
4. We are selling the picture.
5. The girl knows the students.

6. The soldier goes and gets the cake.
7. The child gets [receives] the ball.
8. The doctor reads the newspaper.

Say both German sentences, adding the appropriate pronoun.

1. Das ist mein Lehrer. Kennen Sie ....?
2. Meine Frau heisst Ingrid. Kennen Sie ....?
3. Hier ist ein Volkswagen. Wie finden Sie ....?
4. Der Soldat kennt ein Mädchen. Besucht er ....?
5. Dort kommen Hans und Inge. Grüßen wir ....?
6. Dort ist ein Buch. Bitte, lesen Sie ....!
7. Suchen Sie Ihre Uhr? Ja, ich suche ....
8. Lesen Sie die Zeitung? Ja, ich lese ....
9. Kennen Sie den Film? Ja, ich kenne ....
10. Suchen Sie den Brief? Ja, ich suche ....

For each sentence, circle all the nouns to which the underlined pronoun could grammatically refer.

1. Ich finde ihn sehr interessant.

der Mann	die Dame	das Kind
der Brief	die Blume	das Buch

2. Er sieht sie im Garten.

der Mann	die Dame	das Kind
der Brief	die Blume	das Buch

3. Wir holen es aus dem Wohnzimmer.

der Mann	die Dame	das Kind
der Brief	die Blume	das Buch

4. Ich bringe sie aus der Stadt mit.

der Mann	die Dame	das Kind
der Brief	die Blume	das Buch

5. Er holt es ab.

der Mann	die Dame	das Kind
der Brief	die Blume	das Buch

6. Sie sieht ihn auf dem Sofa.

der Mann	die Dame	das Kind
der Brief	die Blume	das Buch

7. Wir suchen ihn im Schlafzimmer.

der Mann	die Dame	das Kind
der Brief	die Blume	das Buch

8. Ich zeige sie meinem Freund.

der Mann	die Dame	das Kind
der Brief	die Blume	das Buch

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

The correct answers are shown below:

1.

<u>der Mann</u>	die Dame	das Kind
<u>der Brief</u>	die Blume	das Buch

2.

der Mann	<u>die Dame</u>	das Kind
der Brief	<u>die Blume</u>	das Buch

3.

der Mann	die Dame	<u>das Kind</u>
der Brief	die Blume	<u>das Buch</u>

4.

der Mann	<u>die Dame</u>	das Kind
der Brief	<u>die Blume</u>	das Buch

5.

der Mann	die Dame	<u>das Kind</u>
der Brief	die Blume	<u>das Buch</u>

6.

<u>der Mann</u>	die Dame	das Kind
<u>der Brief</u>	die Blume	das Buch

7.

<u>der Mann</u>	die Dame	das Kind
<u>der Brief</u>	die Blume	das Buch

8.

der Mann	<u>die Dame</u>	das Kind
der Brief	<u>die Blume</u>	das Buch



1. Ich habe das Buch, aber ich lese \_\_\_\_\_ nicht.
2. Er sieht die Dame, aber er grüsst \_\_\_\_\_ nicht.
3. Sie sucht den Mann, aber sie findet \_\_\_\_\_ nicht.
4. Er steht am Fenster, aber er öffnet \_\_\_\_\_ nicht.
5. Wir holen den Brief, aber wir öffnen \_\_\_\_\_ nicht.
6. Ich habe den Bleistift, aber ich brauche \_\_\_\_\_ nicht.
7. Sie kennen das Mädchen, aber Sie besuchen \_\_\_\_\_ nicht.
8. Wir haben den Kuchen, aber wir essen \_\_\_\_\_ nicht.
9. Ich sehe die Mutter und das Kind, aber ich kenne \_\_\_\_\_ nicht.
10. Ich trinke mit Ihnen, aber ich liebe \_\_\_\_\_ nicht.
11. Er braucht die Lampe, aber er holt \_\_\_\_\_ nicht.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

In the preceding exercises you practiced sentences in which noun accusative objects were replaced by pronoun accusative objects in sentences such as:

Ich sehe den Mann becomes Ich sehe ihn  
 (accusative case noun) (accusative case pronoun)

We will now practice the use of accusative case pronouns in phrases containing prepositions.

Listen and repeat.

1. Der Herr kauft die Zeitschrift für die Dame.  
Der Herr kauft die Zeitschrift für sie.
2. Die Lehrerin fährt ohne ihren Mann nach Deutschland.  
Die Lehrerin fährt ohne ihn nach Deutschland.
3. Ich habe nichts gegen Sie, Herr Müller.  
Haben Sie etwas gegen mich?
4. Ich schreibe an die Freundin.  
Ich schreibe an sie.
5. Die Mutter denkt an das Kind.  
Die Mutter denkt an es.
6. Das Mädchen geht ohne seinen Freund ins Kino.  
Das Mädchen geht ohne ihn ins Kino.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. es
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. sie
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. ihn
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. es
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. ihn
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. ihn
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. es
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. ihn
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. sie
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. Sie
- \_\_\_\_\_ 11. sie

START THE TAPE.

Please note that all of the preceding sentences used noun objects referring to persons or animals (in other words, animate beings). Inanimate noun objects (things), however, cannot be replaced by pronouns in preposition + accusative construction. Thus, in the sentence

Das Kind läuft unter den Tisch,

the noun object "den Tisch" cannot be replaced by the pronoun ihn.

The structural feature replacing the preposition + pronoun pattern for inanimate noun objects will be taken up in

Say the sentences, replacing the underlined noun objects by pronoun objects wherever this is possible. If it is not possible, simply repeat the original sentence.

1. Wir stellen den Tisch neben das Sofa.
2. Ich hole die Zeitschrift für die Freundin.
3. Er läuft um die Ecke.
4. Das Auto fährt gegen das Haus.
5. Sie geht ohne den Freund ins Kino.
6. Ich schreibe einen Brief an die Dame.
7. Sie legt die Aktentasche auf den Tisch.
8. Sie bringt eine Pflanze für das Wohnzimmer.
9. Das Kind läuft vor das Auto.

Listen to and repeat the following sentences:

1. Ich kann Deutsch sprechen.  
(I can speak German.)
2. Wir dürfen hier rauchen.  
(We may smoke here.)
3. Er will Fussball spielen.  
(He wants to play soccer.)
4. Ich muss zur Schule gehen.  
(I have to go to school.)
5. Er soll Deutsch sprechen.  
(He is supposed to speak German.)
6. Er mag den Kuchen nicht essen.  
(He doesn't like to eat the cake.)

How many verbs does each sentence have?

In what grammatical form is the second verb of each sentence?

The second verb is always in the infinitive form, and the first verb is in the regular conjugated form; that is to say, it agrees with the person and number of the subject of the sentence. The particular conjugated verbs which we are studying here belong to a class of verbs called modal auxiliaries. They are called modal auxiliaries because they express a certain mode or condition under which the main action of the sentence occurs. These include the notions of: ability, permission, wanting or volition, necessity, obligation, and preference.

### Modal Auxiliaries

In this lesson, you will learn the German modal auxiliary verbs and practice using them in typical German sentences. This lesson will also teach you the distinction between aber and sondern, two words rendered by the single word "but" in English.

The lesson is divided into four sections as follows:

1. Formation and use of modal auxiliary verbs
2. Modal verbs with separable prefix verbs
3. The use of mögen
4. Aber and sondern

For example, in the sentence:

Ich kann Deutsch sprechen. (I can speak German.)  
the notion of ability is conveyed.

In the sentence:

Ich muss zur Schule gehen. (I must go to school.)  
the idea of necessity is involved.

Thus, the modal auxiliary verbs are used to change or qualify the meaning of a sentence or clause so that it reflects a certain mode not present in the simple sentence. Compare the additional information or "coloring" added by the modal auxiliaries in sentences such as the following:

Ich rauche nicht.  
(I don't smoke.)

Ich darf nicht rauchen.  
(I am not permitted to smoke.)

Ich gehe zur Schule.  
(I go to school.)

Ich muss zur Schule gehen.  
(I have to go to school.)

Er spricht Deutsch.  
(He is speaking German.)

Er soll Deutsch sprechen.  
(He is supposed to speak German.)

Remember that when a modal auxiliary is added to a simple sentence or independent clause it is the modal verb itself which is conjugated, while the main verb is used in the infinitive form and is placed at the end of the sentence or clause.

Simple Construction

Modal Auxiliary Construction

Er trinkt ein Bier.

Er will ein Bier trinken.

main verb conjugated

modal auxil- main verb  
iary conjugated at end, in  
infinitive  
form

The modal auxiliary sentence above would be translated in English as:

"He wants to drink a beer."

Note, however, that in modal auxiliary constructions, the German infinitive is always used without the zu even though the English translation may require a "to."

The following table shows the various present tense forms of the five modal auxiliaries you will be practicing, except for the familiar forms which will be studied in a later lesson. Study this list as long as you would like, in order to review the forms of the modals in the various persons.

	können	müssen	dürfen	wollen	sollen
ich	kann	muss	darf	will	soll
er					
sie	kann	muss	darf	will	soll
es					
wir	können	müssen	dürfen	wollen	sollen
Sie [you]	können	müssen	dürfen	wollen	sollen
sie [they]	können	müssen	dürfen	wollen	sollen

START THE TAPE.

Although the modal auxiliaries have fairly distinct meanings, they can be translated by several different English expressions, depending on context. For example:

Ich darf gehen. could be translated as:

I am permitted to go.  
I may go.  
I can go.  
I am allowed to go.

Since all of these sentences contain the idea of permission, the single modal auxiliary dürfen covers the various English expressions.

Compare the English possibilities for the single German expression in the following list:

MODE	MODAL	GERMAN	ENGLISH
ability	können	<u>Er kann singen.</u> He is able to sing. He knows how to sing.	He can sing.
possibility		<u>Es kann sein.</u>	It may be.
necessity	müssen	<u>Ich muss gehen.</u> I must go. I have to go. I am forced to go.	
intention	wollen	<u>Er will früh aufstehen.</u> He intends to get up early. He plans to get up early.	He wants to get up early.
obligation	sollen	<u>Ich soll essen.</u> I'm supposed to eat. I'm expected to eat.	

## START THE TAPE.

When working with the exercises to follow, you should keep in mind the range of meaning of the German modal auxiliary verbs and the fact that several slightly different English constructions may be rendered by a single German modal expression.

Repeat the German, noticing the English translations.

1. Ich kann den Brief nicht finden.  
(I can't find the letter.)
2. Ich darf nicht ins Kino gehen.  
(I'm not allowed to go to the movie.)
3. Er muss fahren.  
(He must drive.) (He has to drive.)
4. Er soll das Buch lesen.  
(He is supposed to read the book.)
5. Wir wollen hier nicht sitzen.  
(We don't want to sit here.)

NOTES

Write the German modal auxiliary verb which would be used to convey the sense of the underlined English words in each of the following sentences. Write the infinitive form of the German modal.

1. He has to work every day. \_\_\_\_\_
2. She is allowed to go to Paris. \_\_\_\_\_
3. I want to drive a Volkswagen. \_\_\_\_\_
4. We know how to read German. \_\_\_\_\_
5. You are supposed to help your father. \_\_\_\_\_
6. We can learn German quickly. \_\_\_\_\_
7. They are permitted to drink beer. \_\_\_\_\_
8. You are expected to bring him his breakfast. \_\_\_\_\_
9. We want to sell our house. \_\_\_\_\_
10. I must get up early. \_\_\_\_\_

Write the appropriate conjugated form of the modal verb in parentheses.

1. Sie [they] \_\_\_\_\_ einen Brief schreiben. (müssen)
2. Er \_\_\_\_\_ das Fenster nicht öffnen. (können)
3. Wir \_\_\_\_\_ das Gepäck bringen. (sollen)
4. Sie [she] \_\_\_\_\_ ins Kino gehen. (dürfen)
5. Wir \_\_\_\_\_ den Namen wissen. (müssen)
6. Ich \_\_\_\_\_ kein Bier trinken. (dürfen)
7. Sie [she] \_\_\_\_\_ keinen Kuchen essen. (wollen)
8. Sie [you] \_\_\_\_\_ Deutsch sprechen. (können)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. müssen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. dürfen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. wollen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. können
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. sollen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. können
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. dürfen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. sollen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. wollen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. müssen

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Sie müssen einen Brief schreiben.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. Er kann das Fenster nicht öffnen.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Wir sollen das Gepäck bringen.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Sie darf ins Kino gehen.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Wir müssen den Namen wissen.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Ich darf kein Bier trinken.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Sie will keinen Kuchen essen.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Sie können Deutsch sprechen.

START THE TAPE.



Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate form of the verb in parentheses.

1. Ich .... keinen Kaffee trinken. (dürfen)
2. Sie [they] .... morgen nach Hamburg fahren. (können)
3. Er .... mit dem Taxi fahren. (sollen)
4. Sie [you] .... das Buch haben. (wollen)
5. Ich .... jetzt den Dialog lernen. (müssen)
6. Sie [you] .... jetzt fahren. (können)
7. Sie [she] .... das Frühstück bringen. (sollen)
8. Sie [they] .... nach Hause gehen. (dürfen)

Write the German, replacing the subject pronoun with the noun or pronoun in parentheses (changing the verb accordingly).

1. Ich kann das Flugzeug nicht sehen. (wir)  
\_\_\_\_\_ das Flugzeug nicht sehen.
2. Ich muss zur Schule gehen. (das Kind)  
\_\_\_\_\_ zur Schule gehen.
3. Er kann den Bleistift nicht finden. (das Mädchen)  
\_\_\_\_\_ den Bleistift nicht finden.
4. Er darf kein Bier trinken. (sie [they])  
\_\_\_\_\_ kein Bier trinken.
5. Wir sollen um 8 Uhr im Büro sein. (ich)  
\_\_\_\_\_ um 8 Uhr im Büro sein.
6. Er will in die Schule gehen. (Sie [you])  
\_\_\_\_\_ in die Schule gehen.
7. Wir müssen hier sitzen. (ich)  
\_\_\_\_\_ hier sitzen.
8. Ich soll dem Lehrer helfen. (der Schüler und die Schülerin)  
\_\_\_\_\_ dem Lehrer helfen.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

Say complete German sentences, replacing the subject pronoun with the pronoun in parentheses. Remember to change the modal auxiliary accordingly.

1. Ich muss zur Bank gehen. (wir)
2. Wir sollen das Gepäck bringen. (er)
3. Will er das Bild sehen? (Sie [you])
4. Er kann die Aktentasche nicht finden. (ich)
5. Wir dürfen den Wein nicht trinken. (sie [she])
6. Sie können den Eingang nicht finden. (wir)
7. Er muss den Ball suchen. (sie [they])
8. Ich will die Zeitung nicht lesen. (wir)

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Wir können
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. Das Kind muss
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Das Mädchen kann
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Sie dürfen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Ich soll
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Sie wollen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Ich muss
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Der Schüler und die Schülerin sollen

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, replacing the modal verb shown with the modal verb in parentheses.

1. Ich muss heute früh nach Hause kommen. (sollen)
2. Vater und Mutter wollen nach Hamburg reisen. (müssen)
3. Wir wollen keinen Brief schreiben. (sollen)
4. Sie will das Buch lesen. (müssen)
5. Sie können jetzt Fussball spielen. (dürfen)
6. Sie soll mir den Zucker geben. (müssen)
7. Ich darf meinen Freund nicht besuchen. (können)
8. Er kann ihr helfen. (wollen)
9. Er darf ins Kino gehen. (können)

#### NOTES

Say complete German sentences, replacing the subject pronoun with each of the words in parentheses.

Wir wollen eine Reise machen (take a trip).

1. (er)
2. (Sie [you])
3. (ich)
4. (sie [she])

Ich muss zum Arzt gehen.

5. (er)
6. (wir)
7. (Sie [you])
8. (sie [they])

Er kann das Feuerzeug nicht finden.

9. (sie [she])
10. (ich)
11. (wir)
12. (sie [they])

## NOTES

Say the German.

1. I have to go home.
2. You can see the airplane.
3. I want to eat cake.
4. You are allowed to go.
5. He is expected to come today.
6. She can speak German.
7. We have to stay.
8. We are supposed to work now.

Write complete German sentences on the basis of the given English.

NOTES

1. I can understand the stranger.

---

2. She's supposed to come to the office.

---

3. We want to drink a beer.

---

4. I have to find the newspaper.

---

5. She is allowed to drink wine.

---

6. We have to learn German.

---

7. They may play soccer.

---

8. He knows how to speak German.

---

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

NOTES

1. Ich kann den Fremden verstehen.

---

2. Sie soll ins Büro kommen.

---

3. Wir wollen ein Bier trinken.

---

4. Ich muss die Zeitung finden.

---

5. Sie darf Wein trinken.

---

6. Wir müssen Deutsch lernen.

---

7. Sie dürfen Fussball spielen.

---

8. Er kann Deutsch sprechen.

---

START THE TAPE.

## Section 2

### Modal Verbs with Separable Prefix Verbs

In this section of the **Lesson**, you will practice the use of modal auxiliary verbs in conjunction with separable prefix verbs. Listen to and repeat the following sentences.

1. Ich muss nach Hause gehen.  
(I have to go home.)
2. Er soll früh aufstehen.  
(He is supposed to get up early.)
3. Sie soll mir das Geld geben.  
(She is supposed to give me the money.)
4. Sie müssen das Geld hergeben.  
(You have to hand over the money.)

In each of these examples, you will notice that the infinitive is at the end of the sentence.

Which sentences contain a separable prefix verb?

You will note, however, that the sentence structure is the same in all cases, and that the prefix of the separable prefix verb is not separated from the main part of the verb when used in a modal auxiliary construction. The full separable prefix verb is placed ~~at the end of the phrase or sentence, in its infinitive form.~~

Say the German, replacing the simple verb by the separable prefix verb in parentheses.

1. Ich darf das Buch lesen. (mitnehmen)
2. Er soll die Dame grüssen. (abholen)
3. Sie will Wein trinken. (einschenken)
4. Wir wollen unseren Freund fragen. (mitbringen)
5. Sie dürfen nach Berlin fahren. (mitfahren)
6. Ich muss meine Mutter besuchen. (anrufen)
7. Sie kann morgen kommen. (abfahren)
8. Er darf mit dem Mädchen sprechen. (ausgehen)

### NOTES

NOTES



Write complete German sentences using the verbs given in parentheses.

1. She is supposed to pour the beer. (einschenken)  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. I want to drive along to Germany. (mitfahren)  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. He is permitted to invite the lady. (einladen)  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. We have to get up early. (aufstehen)  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. I can depart tomorrow. (abfahren)  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. They are expected to begin [with] the work.  
(anfangen)  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. We want to give back the money. (zurückgeben)  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. She may bring along her girl friend. (mitbringen)  
\_\_\_\_\_

Write the German, incorporating the modal auxiliary verb in parentheses. For example:

You see: Sie geht heute abend aus. (dürfen)

You write: Sie darf heute abend ausgehen.

1. Ich lasse den Offizier vorbei. (müssen)  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Er schenkt ein Glas Wein ein. (sollen)  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Der Schüler bringt die Zeitung mit. (sollen)  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Wir stehen morgen spät auf. (dürfen)  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Sie fangen gleich mit der Arbeit an. (wollen)  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Sie kommt nach Deutschland mit. (dürfen)  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. Ich nehme meine Frau mit. (wollen)  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. Er holt die Dame von zu Hause ab. (können)  
\_\_\_\_\_

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. Sie soll das Bier einschenken.

---

2. Ich will nach Deutschland mitfahren.

---

3. Er darf die Dame einladen.

---

4. Wir müssen früh aufstehen.

---

5. Ich kann morgen abfahren.

---

6. Sie sollen mit der Arbeit anfangen.

---

7. Wir wollen das Geld zurückgeben.

---

8. Sie darf ihre Freundin mitbringen.

---

If you made any mistakes, write correctly the entire German sentence.

1. Ich muss den Offizier vorbeilassen.

---

2. Er soll ein Glas Wein einschenken.

---

3. Der Schüler soll die Zeitung mitbringen.

---

4. Wir dürfen morgen spät aufstehen.

---

5. Sie wollen gleich mit der Arbeit anfangen.

---

6. Sie darf nach Deutschland mitkommen.

---

7. Ich will meine Frau mitnehmen.

---

8. Er kann die Dame von zu Hause abholen.

---

START THE TAPE.

### Section 3

#### The Use of "Mögen"

By now you should have a good working knowledge of the modal auxiliary verbs, with the exception of the verb mögen. Mögen is a somewhat more complicated verb because it can function both as a modal verb and as a full (non-modal) verb. We will first study its modal use. Listen to and repeat the following present tense forms of mögen:

ich mag	wir mögen
	Sie mögen
er [sie, es] mag	sie mögen

Now repeat the following sentences, noticing the English translations:

1. Er mag Wein trinken. (He likes to drink wine.)
2. Sie mögen Kuchen essen. (They like to eat cake.)
3. Der Soldat mag eine Zigarre rauchen. (The soldier likes to smoke a cigar.)
4. Wir mögen Tennis spielen. (We like to play tennis.)
5. Sie mag nicht arbeiten. (She doesn't like to work.)
6. Ich mag heute abend nicht ausgehen. (I don't like to go out tonight.)

The above sentences illustrate the modal use of mögen: the main verb (trinken, essen, etc.) appears in its infinitive form at the end of the sentence, and mögen, the modal, is conjugated according to the person and number of the subject.

Mögen (like the other modals) can be used as a full verb by omitting an infinitive whose meaning is already clear from the context. For example, in sentences 1 through 3 above, "trinken," "essen," and "rauchen" are somewhat redundant, since you already know that wine is usually drunk, cake eaten, and cigars smoked. In such cases, the infinitive can be considered "understood" and not actually used in the sentence. Thus:

- Er mag Wein. (trinken understood)  
Sie mögen Kuchen. (essen understood)  
Der Soldat mag Zigarren. (rauchen understood)

An even more common use of mögen in full-verb form is one which expresses the simple "liking" of people or things:

- Ich mag Beethoven. (I like Beethoven.)  
Seine Freundin mag Blumen. (His girl friend likes flowers.)

Both as a modal and a full verb, mögen is reinforceable with the adverb gern, meaning "to like very much":

- Sie mag ihn nicht gern stören. (She doesn't [very much] like to disturb him.)  
Wir mögen ihn gern. (We like him very much.)

Translate aloud into German, using the appropriate form of mögen.

1. I like Berlin.  
Ich .... Berlin.
2. Do you like the Volkswagen over there?  
.... Sie den Volkswagen da drüben?
3. The child likes milk.  
Das Kind .... Milch.
4. We like our teacher.  
Wir .... unsere Lehrerin.
5. I like the movie.  
Ich .... den Film.
6. They don't like the newspaper.  
Sie .... die Zeitung nicht.

Möchte, the subjunctive form of mögen, is translated "would like to" (do something, have something, etc.). It is often used in a modal sense, as shown in the following sentences:

1. Ich möchte nach Hause gehen.  
(I would like to go home.)
2. Er möchte ins Kino gehen.  
(He would like to go to the movies.)
3. Wir möchten ein Bier trinken.  
(We would like to drink a beer.)
4. Sie möchten nach Berlin fahren.  
(They would like to travel to Berlin.)
5. Ich möchte Milch haben.  
(I would like to have milk.)

#### NOTES

Write mögen or möchte to indicate which of these would be used in translating the English sentences.

1. I would like to stay here. \_\_\_\_\_
2. They like beer. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Would you like to go to the movies? \_\_\_\_\_
4. We would like to visit my father. \_\_\_\_\_
5. They like him very much. \_\_\_\_\_
6. I don't like him. \_\_\_\_\_
7. We would like to go to Berlin. \_\_\_\_\_
8. He likes Paris. \_\_\_\_\_
9. He doesn't like to go to school. \_\_\_\_\_
10. I do not like Mozart. \_\_\_\_\_
11. I would like to have more money. \_\_\_\_\_
12. She likes coffee. \_\_\_\_\_

As you may have noticed, both möchte and the previously studied modal verb wollen express the idea of "wishing" or "desiring" to do something. The distinction between the two verbs is one of emphasis or intensity, with wollen being much stronger and möchte being more polite.

For example, the English "I'd like to invite a girl" would be rendered by: Ich möchte ein Mädchen einladen, while the English "I want to invite a girl" (in the sense of strongly wishing or definitely intending) is rendered by: Ich will ein Mädchen einladen.

"Tone down" the following sentences by replacing wollen with the appropriate form of the less emphatic möchte. Say the entire new German sentence.

1. Ich will nach Berlin fahren.
2. Wir wollen morgen früh aufstehen.
3. Wir wollen jetzt gehen.
4. Er will bis neun Uhr schlafen.
5. Sie wollen einen Spaziergang machen.
6. Sie will ins Kino gehen.
7. Ich will das Gepäck tragen.
8. Sie will ihr Auto verkaufen.

START THE TAPE.

Say the German, replacing the modal verb shown with the proper form of möchte.

1. Ich muss schnell nach Hause gehen.
2. Wir wollen ins Kino gehen.
3. Er darf Bier trinken.
4. Können Sie jetzt einen Spaziergang machen?
5. Sie kann mich besuchen.
6. Er soll Deutsch lernen.
7. Sie dürfen hier bleiben.

Like mögen, möchte may be combined with the adverb gern, as in the following example:

Ich möchte gern nach Paris fahren.

This might be translated "I would like to go to Paris" or "I would very much like to go to Paris."

Say the German, using möchte and gern.

1. I would like to drink a glass of wine.
2. I would like to have some [etwas] milk.
3. We would like to visit Dr. Meyer.
4. I would like to come along.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. möchte
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. mögen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. möchte
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. möchte
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. mögen...gern
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. mögen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. möchte
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. mögen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. mögen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. mögen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 11. möchte
- \_\_\_\_\_ 12. mögen

START THE TAPE.

Möchte is also frequently used to make a polite inquiry concerning a person's wishes or preferences. For example:

1. Möchten Sie ein Glas Wein trinken, Herr Müller?  
(Would you like to drink a glass of wine, Mr. Müller?)
2. Möchten Sie mit mir ins Kino gehen, Fräulein Schmidt?  
(Would you like to go to the movies with me, Miss Schmidt?)
3. Möchten Sie eine Zigarette rauchen?  
(Would you like to smoke a cigarette?)

Listen to the German statement and say the corresponding polite question. For example:

You see: Ich möchte ein Glas Bier trinken.

(or: Wir möchten ein Glas Bier trinken.)

You say: Möchten Sie ein Glas Bier trinken?

1. Ich möchte das Haus verkaufen.
2. Ich möchte mit Hans ausgehen.
3. Wir möchten bald frühstücken.
4. Wir möchten mit der Lehrerin sprechen.
5. Ich möchte eine Zigarette rauchen.
6. Wir möchten gern die Adresse haben.
7. Ich möchte in Kalifornien bleiben.

## Section 4

### "Aber" and "Sondern"

Notice the following English sentences:

1. I have a girl friend, but she is in Paris.
2. The beer is good, but the wine is better.
3. He has a car but no garage.
4. They work in the morning but not in the afternoon

All of the above sentences would use the German word aber to convey the English "but":

1. Ich habe eine Freundin, aber sie ist in Paris.
2. Das Bier ist gut, aber der Wein ist besser.
3. Er hat ein Auto, aber keine Garage.
4. Sie arbeiten am Morgen, aber nicht am Nachmittag.

Note, however, this set of English sentences:

1. He isn't going to Paris, but to Berlin.
2. He is not a doctor, but a teacher.
3. We aren't reading a newspaper, but a book.
4. I am not sleeping, but working.

In each of the above sentences, the first phrase contains a negation: "He isn't going to Paris," "He is not a doctor," and so forth. In addition, the second phrase of the sentence squarely contradicts the first phrase and presents the "true facts" about the situation. "He isn't going to Paris but [the true fact] to Berlin."

"He is not a doctor, but [the true fact] a teacher."

In sentences of this type, German has a special word sondern which is used to convey the idea of "but." It may be helpful to think of sondern as meaning "but on the contrary."

Repeat the German equivalents of the preceding English sentences:

1. Er geht nicht nach Paris, sondern nach Berlin.
2. Er ist nicht Arzt, sondern Lehrer.
3. Wir lesen keine Zeitung, sondern ein Buch.
4. Ich schlafe nicht, sondern ich arbeite.

Now consider the following sentence:

Sie soll nicht lesen, sondern schreiben.

From the preceding example, you should see that when the main clause contains a modal auxiliary, the infinitive moves only to the end of that clause, not to the end of the whole sentence. Keep this in mind as you work through the following exercises.



Write the German, filling in the blanks with aber or sondern as appropriate.

1. I am supposed to go to school but I don't want to.

Ich soll zur Schule gehen, \_\_\_\_\_ ich möchte nicht.

2. I have a friend but he won't help me.

Ich habe einen Freund, \_\_\_\_\_ er will mir nicht helfen.

3. We are not drinking coffee but tea.

Wir trinken nicht Kaffee, \_\_\_\_\_ Tee.

4. He is drinking wine, but I am drinking beer.

Er trinkt Wein, \_\_\_\_\_ ich trinke Bier.

5. She isn't going to the movies but to her girl friend's.

Sie geht nicht ins Kino, \_\_\_\_\_ zu ihrer Freundin.

6. We don't have a Mercedes but a Volkswagen.

Wir haben keinen Mercedes, \_\_\_\_\_ einen Volkswagen.

7. I would like to work but I'm tired.

Ich möchte arbeiten, \_\_\_\_\_ ich bin müde.

Say complete German sentences, filling in the blanks with aber or sondern as appropriate.

1. We play soccer, but we don't play tennis.

Wir spielen Fussball, .... wir spielen nicht Tennis.

2. He is not here, but at his friend's.

Er ist nicht hier, .... bei seinem Freund.

3. We aren't spending our vacation in California, but in Germany.

Wir verbringen unseren Urlaub nicht in Kalifornien, .... in Deutschland.

4. She doesn't want to go to Paris but to stay at home.

Sie will nicht nach Paris fahren, .... zu Hause bleiben.

5. He doesn't want to go to school but to drive to the beach.

Er will nicht in die Schule gehen, .... an den Strand.

6. I would like to see her but she's at her mother's.

Ich möchte sie besuchen, .... sie ist bei ihrer Mutter.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

\_\_\_\_\_ 1. aber

\_\_\_\_\_ 2. aber

\_\_\_\_\_ 3. sondern

\_\_\_\_\_ 4. aber

\_\_\_\_\_ 5. sondern

\_\_\_\_\_ 6. sondern

\_\_\_\_\_ 7. aber

8. Today we are working but tomorrow we will go to the movies.

Heute arbeiten wir, \_\_\_\_\_ morgen gehen wir ins Kino.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWER.

NOTES

## LESSON 10

### Plural Forms

The purpose of this lesson is to teach you the plural forms of typical German nouns in the nominative, accusative, and dative cases. For learning convenience, German nouns are divided into five groups based on the plural ending they take. Unfortunately, however, the singular form of a German noun does not necessarily allow one to predict its plural ending. For this reason, the plural form of every German noun with which you are familiar must be memorized as a separate vocabulary item along with its singular form.

In the following exercises you will find examples of German nouns in each of the five plural groups.

Remembering that German has three genders, study the following table.

<u>Nominative Singular</u>	<u>Nominative Plural</u>
die Blume	die Blumen
das Kind	die Kinder
der Mann	die Männer

In all three genders, what is the definite article for the nominative case of the plural:

Now look at these sentences:

Wir kaufen die Blumen.

(We buy the flowers.)

Wir lieben die Kinder.

(We love the children.)

Wir sehen die Männer.

(We see the men.)

Notice that the nouns are now direct objects, that is, in German they are in the accusative case.

What is the plural definite article in the accusative case?

But now look at the singular and plural forms of the nouns themselves.

You will notice that each of these nouns forms its plural in a different way. English, too, is not always simple when it comes to the formation of the plural. Although most English nouns simply add an "s" or "es" to form the plural (friend-friends; bush-bushes), there are a number of nouns whose plural follows some other pattern, for example: goose-geese, mouse-mice, ox-oxen, child-children, deer-deer. In the following exercises, we will study the same type of phenomenon in German. Although even finer subdivisions are possible, German noun plurals can be conveniently classified into five major groups each of which will be presented and practiced separately.

Section 1

Plural Group I

Repeat and study the following nouns:

<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
der Koffer	die Koffer
der Kuchen	die Kuchen
der Lehrer	die Lehrer
der Schüler	die Schüler
das Fenster	die Fenster
das Mädchen	die Mädchen
das Zimmer	die Zimmer
der Wagen	die Wagen

What do you notice about the plural form, compared to the singular form?

Repeat the following sentences, noticing the plural forms.

- |                               |                             |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Der Garten ist grün.       | Die Gärten sind grün.       |
| 2. Der Mantel ist neu.        | Die Mäntel sind neu.        |
| 3. Der Vater arbeitet.        | Die Väter arbeiten.         |
| 4. Die Mutter ist freundlich. | Die Mütter sind freundlich. |
| 5. Die Tochter trinkt Milch.  | Die Töchter trinken Milch.  |

What do you notice about the plural form of these nouns?

You may also observe that all the nouns in this group are masculine with the exception only of Tochter and Mutter, which are feminine.

Say the German, changing the underlined noun to the plural. Remember to change the verb, too.

1. Der Koffer steht vor der Tür.
2. Der Kuchen steht auf dem Tisch.
3. Das Fenster ist offen.
4. Das Mädchen ist schön.
5. Der Garten ist gross.
6. Der Mantel ist aus Paris.
7. Der Vater fährt nach Berlin.
8. Die Mutter hilft dem Kind.
9. Die Tochter geht zur Schule.
10. Das Zimmer ist sauber.

Say the following sentences using a plural noun. Remember that the nominative plural and the accusative plural of the nouns are identical.

1. Ich sehe den Vater.
2. Er geht in den Garten.
3. Sie fragen den Lehrer.

4. Ich liebe das Mädchen.
5. Sie besucht die Tochter.
6. Sie brauchen den Mantel.
7. Wir tragen den Koffer.
8. Wir öffnen das Fenster.

Study this sentence:

Ich gebe den Schülern die Bücher.

(I give the students the books.)

In the dative plural form, the article becomes den and you add an -n to the nominative plural of the noun if it does not already end in -n. (You will learn about certain minor exceptions to this rule later in the lesson.)

Fill in the blanks, changing the underlined dative singular into the dative plural.

1. Er hilft dem Lehrer.

Er hilft \_\_\_\_\_.

2. Ich danke dem Mädchen.

Ich danke \_\_\_\_\_.

3. Sie sitzen in dem Zimmer.

Sie sitzen in \_\_\_\_\_.

4. In dem Garten sind viele Blumen.

In \_\_\_\_\_ sind viele Blumen.

5. Mit dem Schüler kann man gut arbeiten.

Mit \_\_\_\_\_ kann man gut arbeiten.

6. Die Lehrerin redet mit der Mutter.

Die Lehrerin redet mit \_\_\_\_\_.

7. Ich fahre mit der Tochter nach Paris.

Ich fahre mit \_\_\_\_\_ nach Paris.

8. Die Kinder bekommen von dem Vater Geld.

Die Kinder bekommen von \_\_\_\_\_ Geld.

9. Sie isst zu viel von dem Kuchen.

Sie isst zu viel von \_\_\_\_\_.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. den Lehrern
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. den Mädchen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. den Zimmern
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. den Gärten
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. den Schülern
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. den Müttern
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. den Töchtern
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. den Vätern
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. den Kuchen

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, supplying the dative plural of the noun in parentheses (article and noun ending).

1. (Tochter) Die Frau spricht mit ....
2. (Mädchen) Der Soldat schreibt ....
3. (Schüler) Das Essen schmeckt ....
4. (Mutter) Der Lehrer dankt ....
5. (Vater) Die Lehrerin spricht mit ....
6. (Garten) Es gibt Blumen in ....

NOTES

Section 2

Plural Group II

Repeat and study the following nouns:

<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
der Brief	die Briefe
der Bleistift	die Bleistifte
der Film	die Filme
der Freund	die Freunde
der Mittag	die Mittage
das Jahr	die Jahre
das Flugzeug	die Flugzeuge
das Spiel	die Spiele

What do you notice about the formation of the plural?

The article is again die and you simply add an -e to the singular form. You will notice that these nouns do not have a vowel change and are either masculine or neuter.

The following (Group II) nouns add an -e to form the plural. Say the sentence, changing the underlined noun to the plural. Remember to change the verbs, too.

1. Der Film ist lang.
2. Der Bleistift ist rot.
3. Der Brief ist interessant.
4. Das Jahr ist lang.
5. Der Tisch ist neu.
6. Das Flugzeug ist schnell.
7. Das Spiel ist schön.
8. Der Tag ist kurz.

The following nouns of Group II add an -e to form the plural; they also change the stem vowel (umlaut). Listen to and repeat both the singular and plural forms.

<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
der Arzt	die Ärzte
der Ball	die Bälle
der Fuss	die Füße
der Stuhl	die Stühle
die Hand	die Hände
die Nacht	die Nächte
die Stadt	die Städte
die Wand	die Wände

Say the following sentences, changing the underlined nouns to the plural accusative case. Remember that in the plural, the nominative and accusative cases are identical.

NOTES

1. Wir stellen die Blumen auf den Tisch.
2. Er legt den Bleistift auf die Zeitung.
3. Sie will nicht durch die Stadt fahren.
4. Wir fragen den Arzt.
5. Sie hängt Bilder an die Wand.
6. Das Kind sucht den Fussball.



Rewrite the following sentences, replacing the singular of the underlined nouns by the plural form.

1. Der Tag in Paris ist schön.

---

2. Der Brief ist von meinem Freund.

---

3. Der Tisch steht im Zimmer.

---

4. Der Ball liegt unter dem Stuhl.

---

5. Der Arzt arbeitet jeden Tag.

---

6. Die Stadt liegt in Deutschland.

---

7. Die Wand ist weiss.

---

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

Fill in the blanks, changing the underlined nouns to the plural dative case. Remember to use den plus the -n or -en ending.

1. Die Freunde sitzen an dem Tisch.

Die Freunde sitzen an \_\_\_\_\_.

2. Was macht er mit dem Buch.

Was macht er mit \_\_\_\_\_?

3. Die Mäntel hängen an der Wand.

Die Mäntel hängen an \_\_\_\_\_.

4. Wir geben dem Arzt viel Geld.

Wir geben \_\_\_\_\_ viel Geld.

5. In der Stadt sind viele Läden.

In \_\_\_\_\_ sind viele Läden.

6. Er schreibt dem Freund einen Brief.

Er schreibt \_\_\_\_\_ einen Brief.

7. Das Gepäck steht neben dem Stuhl.

Das Gepäck steht neben \_\_\_\_\_.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. Die Tage in Paris sind schön.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Die Briefe sind von meinem Freund.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Die Tische stehen im Zimmer.

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Die Bälle liegen unter dem Stuhl.

\_\_\_\_\_

5. Die Ärzte arbeiten jeden Tag.

\_\_\_\_\_

6. Die Städte liegen in Deutschland.

\_\_\_\_\_

7. Die Wände sind weiss.

\_\_\_\_\_

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

\_\_\_\_\_

1. den Tischen

\_\_\_\_\_

2. den Büchern

\_\_\_\_\_

3. den Wänden

\_\_\_\_\_

4. den Ärzten

\_\_\_\_\_

5. den Städten

\_\_\_\_\_

6. den Freunden

\_\_\_\_\_

7. den Stühlen

START THE TAPE. :

Section 3

Plural Group III

Repeat and study the following nouns:

<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
das Kind	die Kinder
das Bild	die Bilder
das Buch	die Bücher
das Bad	die Bäder
das Glas	die Gläser
das Haus	die Häuser
das Land	die Länder
der Mann	die Männer
der Gott	die Götter

What do you notice about the plural forms of these nouns?

The plural of these nouns is formed by adding -er to the singular and by changing the stem vowel (umlaut) if this vowel is a, o, u, or au.

You should also note that this group contains only masculine and neuter nouns.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate accusative plural form on the basis of the given English. Remember that the accusative case and the nominative case are identical in the plural.

1. I do not know the children.

Ich kenne \_\_\_\_\_ nicht.

2. He is hanging the pictures on the wall.

Er hängt \_\_\_\_\_ an die Wand.

3. We are looking for the men in the garden.

Wir suchen \_\_\_\_\_ im Garten.

4. Do you see the houses in the city?

Sehen Sie \_\_\_\_\_ in der Stadt?

5. They like the baths at the spa.

Sie mögen \_\_\_\_\_ in dem Kurort.

6. The waiter puts the glasses on the table.

Der Kellner stellt \_\_\_\_\_ auf den Tisch.

7. They bring the books along.

Sie bringen \_\_\_\_\_ mit.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

\_\_\_\_\_ 1. die Kinder

\_\_\_\_\_ 2. die Bilder

\_\_\_\_\_ 3. die Männer

\_\_\_\_\_ 4. die Häuser

\_\_\_\_\_ 5. die Bäder

\_\_\_\_\_ 6. die Gläser

\_\_\_\_\_ 7. die Bücher

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, supplying the plural dative case definite article and noun.

1. (Kind) Sie fährt mit .... nach Deutschland.

2. (Bild) Was macht er mit ....?

3. (Buch) Sie lesen oft in ....

4. (Glas) Der Kellner kommt mit ....

5. (Land) Es gibt viele Städte in .... von Europa.

6. (Mann) Die Frauen sind nett zu ....

7. (Haus) Die Leute kommen aus ....

NOTES

## Section 4

### Plural Group IV

Repeat and study the following nouns:

<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
die Adresse	die Adressen
die Arbeit	die Arbeiten
die Blume	die Blumen
die Dame	die Damen
der Deutsche	die Deutschen
die Familie	die Familien
die Farbe	die Farben
die Freundin	die Freundinnen
der Herr	die Herren
die Lehrerin	die Lehrerinnen
der Nachbar	die Nachbarn
der Soldat	die Soldaten
die Tür	die Türen
das Wochenende	die Wochenenden
die Zeitung	die Zeitungen

How is the plural of these nouns formed?

The plural is formed by adding -n or -en to the singular form.

Note that nouns of all genders appear in this group. Since the nominative plural form for this group already ends in -n (or -en), it is unnecessary to add -n in the dative case. In other words, the dative case is identical with the nominative and accusative case.

Note that nouns whose singular form ends in -in (for example, Freundin, Lehrerin) double the final n before adding the plural -en ending:

<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
die Freundin	die Freundinnen
die Lehrerin	die Lehrerinnen

Nouns in Group IV have no vowel change in the plural.

Say complete German sentences, supplying the correct accusative plural form of the noun in parentheses.

1. (die Adresse) Ich schreibe .... in mein Buch.
2. (die Zeitung) Der Lehrer liest ....
3. (der Soldat) Das Mädchen kennt ....
4. (die Freundin) Sie sehen .... jeden Tag.
5. (der Herr) Die Damen treffen .... im Kino.
6. (der Nachbar) Die Kinder besuchen ....
7. (das Wochenende) Er verbringt .... bei seiner Freundin.
8. (die Blume) Ich hole .... aus dem Garten.

NOTES

You have noticed that the nominative and accusative plural forms of these nouns (Group IV) end in -n or -en. As has been pointed out, the plural dative form is identical with the nominative and accusative form.

Say the following sentences, supplying the plural dative case form of the noun in parentheses.

1. (die Adresse) Was macht er mit ....?
2. (das Wochenende) Sie fährt an .... immer zu ihrem Freund.
3. (der Nachbar) Wir helfen .... oft.
4. (die Dame) Wir gehen mit .... ins Kino.
5. (die Lehrerin) Wir danken ....
6. (die Blume) Das Kind kommt mit ,....

## Section 5

### Plural Group V

Repeat and study the following nouns:

<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
das Auto	die Autos
das Kino	die Kinos
das Restaurant	die Restaurants
das Sofa	die Sofas
das Taxi	die Taxis

How is the plural of these nouns formed?

Your answer should be that the noun adds an -s in the plural. There is no vowel change.

These nouns have come to German from other languages, mostly Latin and French, and are generally easily recognized by their similarity to English nouns.

However, you should not carry this generalization too far, because not all easily recognized borrowed nouns form their plural in this manner. For instance, consider the following:

der Doktor	die Doktoren
der Moment	die Momente
das Telefon	die Telefone
die Zigarette	die Zigaretten
die Zigarre	die Zigarren

In the final analysis, when learning a German noun it is necessary to learn the gender of the noun and its plural form together with the noun.

Say the complete German sentence, supplying the plural accusative case. Remember that the plural nominative and the plural accusative form are identical.

1. (das Auto) Meine Freunde kaufen .... in Berlin.
2. (das Taxi) Das Auto lässt .... vorbei.
3. (das Kino) Kennen Sie .... in Hamburg?
4. (das Restaurant) Herr Müller besucht .... in Paris.
5. (das Sofa) Wir legen die Mäntel auf .... im Wohnzimmer.

Study the following sentences:

1. Die Frauen sitzen auf dem Sofa. (singular dative case)  
Die Frauen sitzen auf den Sofas. (plural dative case)
2. Die Soldaten sitzen in dem Taxi. (singular dative case)  
Die Soldaten sitzen in den Taxibus. (plural dative case)

What do you notice about the plural dative case?

The plural uses the plural dative case form of the definite article, den, but it does not add -n to the plural noun. The -s ending is retained in all cases.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of the German dative plural nouns on the basis of the English.

1. They sit in the cars.

Sie sitzen in \_\_\_\_\_.

2. The girls work in the restaurants.

Die Mädchen arbeiten in \_\_\_\_\_.

3. The soldiers are often in the movie theaters.

Die Soldaten sind oft in \_\_\_\_\_.

4. The newspapers are lying on the sofas.

Die Zeitungen liegen auf \_\_\_\_\_.

5. The strangers ride in the taxis.

Die Fremden fahren mit \_\_\_\_\_.

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. den Autos
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. den Restaurants
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. den Kinos
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. den Sofas
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. den Taxibus

START THE TAPE.



Plural Forms of "kein" Words

The plural forms of nouns are often used with a possessive adjective or a "kein" word. Study the following examples:

Die Bilder sind schön.      Keine Bilder sind schön.  
    Meine Bilder sind schön.  
    Seine Bilder sind schön.  
    Unsere Bilder sind schön.  
    Ihre Bilder sind schön.

Bitte kaufen Sie die Bilder!

Bitte kaufen Sie keine Bilder!  
 Bitte kaufen Sie meine Bilder!  
 Bitte kaufen Sie seine Bilder!  
 Bitte kaufen Sie unsere Bilder!  
 Bitte kaufen Sie Ihre Bilder!  
 Bitte kaufen Sie ihre Bilder!

What do you notice about the plural nominative and accusative form of the "kein" words?

They are formed by adding an -e to the base form kein, mein, sein, unser, etc.

This rule applies to all genders in both the nominative and accusative cases.

Say the entire German sentence, supplying the plural form of the "kein" word and the noun in parentheses.

1. (Ihr Koffer) .... stehen im Zimmer.
2. (seine Tochter) Er nimmt .... nach Berlin mit.
3. (kein Schüler) Im Klassenzimmer sind noch ....
4. (unser Mantel) Wir suchen ....
5. (ihr Vater) Sie lieben ....
6. (unsere Mutter) Wir suchen ....
7. (ihr Brief) Ich lese .... gern.
8. (meine Hand) .... sind kalt.

Say the entire German sentence, supplying the plural form of the "kein" word and the noun in parentheses.

1. (keine Stadt) In der Nacht sehen Sie ....
2. (ihr Kind) .... haben jetzt Ferien.
3. (unser Buch) Wir legen .... auf den Tisch.
4. (mein Bild) Ich zeige Ihnen ....
5. (ihr Wort) Die Schüler lernen ....
6. (seine Arbeit) Er zeigt dem Lehrer ....
7. (unser Nachbar) .... fahren nach Deutschland.
8. (kein Taxi) Wir finden ....
9. (Ihr Garten) Sie zeigen mir ....

Complete the following German sentences by filling in the nominative or accusative plural form of the "kein" words and the nouns.

1. He brings his suitcases to the car.

Er bringt \_\_\_\_\_ zum Auto.

2. I write to my daughters in Paris.

Ich schreibe an \_\_\_\_\_ in Paris.

3. No doctors live in our house.

In unserem Haus wohnen \_\_\_\_\_.

4. She puts her pencils into the briefcase.

Sie tut \_\_\_\_\_ in die Aktentasche.

5. Do you want to visit your friends soon?

Wollen Sie \_\_\_\_\_ bald besuchen?

6. Our cities have many restaurants.

\_\_\_\_\_ haben viele Restaurants.

7. Every day they take their books to school.

Jeden Tag nehmen sie \_\_\_\_\_ in die Schule mit.

8. There are no pictures on the wall.

An der Wand sind \_\_\_\_\_.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

Study the following sentences, in which the plural dative case is used.

Ich schreibe den Mädchen.

Ich schreibe keinen Mädchen.

Wir antworten den Lehrern.

Wir antworten unseren Lehrern.

Sie wohnen in den Häusern.

Sie wohnen in ihren Häusern.

Sie essen in den Restaurants.

Sie essen in keinen Restaurants.

What do you notice about the plural dative case of the "kein" words?

To form the dative plural, the "kein" words add -n to the nominative plural form. For example:

mein Lehrer (nominative singular)

meine Lehrer (nominative plural)

meinen Lehrern (dative plural)

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

\_\_\_\_\_ 1. seine Koffer

\_\_\_\_\_ 2. meine Töchter

\_\_\_\_\_ 3. keine Ärzte

\_\_\_\_\_ 4. ihre Bleistifte

\_\_\_\_\_ 5. Ihre Freunde

\_\_\_\_\_ 6. Unsere Städte

\_\_\_\_\_ 7. ihre Bücher

\_\_\_\_\_ 8. keine Bilder

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, supplying the dative plural of the "kein" word and the noun in parentheses.

1. (ihr Zimmer) Im Winter spielen die Kinder in ....

2. (unsere Mutter) Wir helfen .... gern

3. (Ihr Freund) Sie sprechen mit ....

4. (mein Fuss) Das Kind steht auf ....

5. (ihr Haus) Die Leute wohnen in ....

6. (ihr Buch) Sie liest viel in ....

7. (seine Lehrerin) Er spricht viel von ....

8. (kein Restaurant) Ich esse in ....., sondern zu Hause.

The following five exercises review the material covered in this lesson.

Say the entire German sentence, changing the underlined nouns to the plural. Make any other necessary changes.

1. Ich trage den Koffer zum Auto.

2. Zeigen Sie mir das Zimmer!

3. Der Mantel liegt auf dem Sofa.

4. Das Kind trinkt Milch.

5. Er liest den Brief von seiner Frau.

6. Das Jahr ist lang.

7. Wir hängen die Bilder an die Wand.

8. Ich sehe das Haus.

**NOTES**

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate dative plural form of the "kein" word and the noun on the basis of the given English.

1. The people sit in their cars [use Auto].

Die Leute sitzen in \_\_\_\_\_.

2. He gives his girl friends flowers.

Er schenkt \_\_\_\_\_ Blumen.

3. She often reads in her books.

Sie liest oft in \_\_\_\_\_.

4. You are speaking of your children.

Sie sprechen von \_\_\_\_\_.

5. They travel with their suitcases.

Sie reisen mit \_\_\_\_\_.

6. The films in our movie houses are interesting.

Die Filme in \_\_\_\_\_ sind interessant.

7. I thank our soldiers.

Ich danke \_\_\_\_\_.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate German words on the basis of the given English.

1. Bring the textbooks along!

Bringen Sie \_\_\_\_\_!

2. The students must learn the words.

Die Schülerinnen müssen \_\_\_\_\_ lernen.

3. We always see the gentlemen in the movies.

Wir sehen \_\_\_\_\_ immer im Kino.

4. The flowers are for my teacher.

\_\_\_\_\_ sind für meine Lehrerin.

5. After the movies, the people go to the restaurants.

Nach dem Kino gehen die Leute in \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_.

6. The neighbors are not at home.

\_\_\_\_\_ sind nicht zu Hause.

7. At 11 o'clock the people leave the movies.

Um elf Uhr kommen die Leute aus \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_.

8. We know the streets of Paris well.

Wir kennen \_\_\_\_\_ von Paris gut.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. ihren Autos
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. seinen Fre ndinnen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. ihren Büchern
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Ihren Kindern
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. ihren Koffern
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. unseren Kinos
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. unseren Soldaten

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. die Lehrbücher mit
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. die Wörter
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. die Herren
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. die Blumen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. die Restaurants
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. die Nachbarn
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. den Kinos
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. die Strassen

Complete the sentences, using accusative and dative plural forms as required.

START THE TAPE.

1. She is very friendly to the strangers.

Sie ist sehr freundlich zu \_\_\_\_\_.

2. They put the suitcases in the cars.

Sie legen \_\_\_\_\_ in \_\_\_\_\_.

3. The coats are lying on the sofas.

\_\_\_\_\_ liegen auf \_\_\_\_\_.

4. The officer speaks with the Germans.

Der Offizier spricht mit \_\_\_\_\_.

5. The students are coming with the books.

Die Schüler kommen mit \_\_\_\_\_.

6. The people live in the houses.

Die Leute wohnen in \_\_\_\_\_.

7. We write our girl friends on the weekends.

Wir schreiben \_\_\_\_\_ an \_\_\_\_\_.

8. The mothers give the children cake.

Die Mütter geben \_\_\_\_\_.

Say the entire German sentence, supplying the appropriate plural form of the "kein" word and the noun in parentheses.

1. (Ihr Koffer) Sie tragen ....

2. (unsere Tochter) Wir besuchen ....

3. (ihr Freund) Sie trifft ....

4. (keine Freundin) Die Soldaten haben ....

5. (ihr Mann) Die Frauen suchen ....

6. (ihr Kind) .... gehen zur Schule.

7. (mein Arzt) Ich frage ....

8. (sein Buch) .... liegen auf dem Tisch.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. den Fremden
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. die Koffer .... die Autos
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. die Mäntel .... den Sofas
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. den Deutschen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. den Büchern
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. den Häusern
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. unseren Freundinnen .... den Wochenenden
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. den Kindern Kuchen

START THE TAPE.

Say the entire German sentence, supplying the appropriate plural form of the "kein" word and the noun in parentheses.

1. (Ihr Koffer) Sie tragen ....
2. (unsere Tochter) Wir besuchen ....
3. (ihr Freund) Sie trifft ....
4. (keine Freundin) Die Soldaten haben ....
5. (ihr Mann) Die Frauen suchen ....
6. (ihr Kind) .... gehen zur Schule.
7. (mein Arzt) Ich frage ....
8. (sein Buch) .... liegen auf dem Tisch.



Complete the following sentences by filling in the blanks with the dative plural form of the "kein" word and the noun in parentheses.

NOTES

1. (sein Lehrer) Der Schüler spricht nicht mit \_\_\_\_\_.

2. (sein Schüler) Der Lehrer liest die Bücher mit \_\_\_\_\_.

3. (ihr Glas) Die Kinder haben Milch in \_\_\_\_\_.

4. (meine Zigarre) Nehmen Sie, bitte, eine von \_\_\_\_\_.

5. (unser Bild) Wir haben viel Arbeit mit \_\_\_\_\_.

6. (Ihre Freundin) Sie bekommen viele Briefe von \_\_\_\_\_.

7. (ihr Stuhl) Die Kinder sitzen auf \_\_\_\_\_.

8. (unser Bleistift) Wir schreiben mit \_\_\_\_\_.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

NOTES

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. seinen Lehrern
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. seinen Schülern
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. ihren Gläsern
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. meinen Zigarren
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. unseren Bildern
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Ihren Freundinnen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. ihren Stühlen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. unseren Bleistiften

## LESSON 11

### Familiar Address I

The purpose of this and the following lesson is to teach you the forms and uses of the familiar address in German, including the familiar personal pronouns, the corresponding verb forms, and familiar possessive adjectives.

The present lesson contains the following sections:

1. Familiar Personal Pronouns (Nominative Case); Familiar Forms of Sein, Haben, and Other Verbs
2. Familiar Forms of Separable Prefix Verbs and Modal Auxiliary Verbs
3. Familiar Imperatives

#### 1. Familiar Personal Pronouns (Nominative Case); Familiar Forms of "Sein," "Haben," and Other Verbs

In present-day English, a single personal pronoun, "you," is used to address one or more than one person, regardless of the social situation. The English of a few centuries ago, however, used a second, so-called familiar form of address which was used when speaking with close friends or children, and in certain other situations. These forms were "thou" (when addressing one person) and "ye" (when addressing more than one person).

An analogous distinction between formal and familiar forms of address is made in present-day German. You already know the German personal pronoun used to express "you" in formal address. What is this pronoun (in the nominative case form)?

The nominative form of the formal "you" in German is Sie with a capital "S." (The capital letter distinguishes it from sie, which, as you know, can mean either "she" or "they.")

How many persons can be addressed using the pronoun Sie?

Sie can be used to address either one person or several persons, provided, of course, that the speaker wishes to use formal address.

When a German speaker talks with relatives, close friends or children he uses the appropriate familiar form of "you." These forms (in the nominative case) are:

du - used when speaking to one person

ihr - used when speaking to more than one person

Write these two forms on the lines below:

\_\_\_\_\_ - one person  
\_\_\_\_\_ - more than one person

The formal pronoun Sie should always be used when speaking to adults who are not close friends, and to persons whom you would ordinarily address as Herr, Frau, or Fräulein, or with whom you would use a title, such as Herr Doktor, Herr Professor, Herr Leutnant.

The familiar forms du and ihr are usually employed among close family members or very good friends who have mutually decided to use the familiar address. In addition, familiar forms are used to address children up to about teen age.

Say the two familiar forms of the nominative case of the German personal pronoun for "you."

You are probably aware that in earlier forms of English there were also familiar verb forms as well as familiar pronouns. Thus, the English "you have" (formal address) was rendered in familiar address as "thou hast."

The same situation exists in modern German. When a person speaks using familiar address, he must use the appropriate familiar verb forms as well as the familiar pronouns. We will now study the familiar present tense forms of the irregular verbs haben and sein.

Review the present tense forms of the verb sein, noting the addition of the singular and plural familiar forms. Listen and repeat:

ich bin	wir sind
du <u>bist</u>	ihr <u>seid</u>
	Sie sind
er, sie, es ist	sie sind

Throughout the module, we will use the convention that sentences using first names (Hans, Kurt, Maria, etc.) or referring to close family members (Mutter, Tochter, etc.) will call for familiar forms. Sentences using last names (Herr Schmidt, Frau Müller, etc.) or titles will call for formal usage.

Study the verb forms above until you feel you know them thoroughly, then turn the page for a written exercise.

Now study the present tense forms of haben, noticing especially the familiar forms. Listen and repeat:

ich habe	wir haben
du <u>hast</u>	ihr <u>habt</u>
	Sie haben
er, sie, es hat	sie haben

Stop the tape to study these forms further, then turn the page for a written exercise.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate present tense form of sein.

1. Karl und Maria, ihr \_\_\_\_\_ meine Freunde.
2. Mutter, \_\_\_\_\_ du heute abend zu Hause?
3. Herr Becker, \_\_\_\_\_ Sie morgen im Büro?
4. Anni, du \_\_\_\_\_ sehr nett.
5. Herr und Frau Meyer, \_\_\_\_\_ Sie schon lange hier?

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate present tense form of haben.

1. Peter, \_\_\_\_\_ du Zeit für mich?
2. Herr Professor, \_\_\_\_\_ Sie heute viel zu tun?
3. Karl und Inge, ihr \_\_\_\_\_ aber nie Zeit.
4. Vater, \_\_\_\_\_ du einen Bleistift?
5. Frau Schulz, \_\_\_\_\_ Sie etwas Zucker im Haus?

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. seid
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. bist
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. sind
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. bist
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. sind

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. hast
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. haben
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. habt
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. hast
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. haben

START THE TAPE.

The familiar forms of verbs other than sein and haben are quite easy to learn. Most verbs form the familiar forms by adding -st to the infinitive verb stem for the singular and -t to the verb stem for the plural. (The infinitive stem is the infinitive form minus the infinitive ending -en.)

Study the following examples:

<u>Infinitive</u>	<u>Stem</u>	<u>Familiar Form</u>
kommen	komm-	du komm <u>st</u> (singular) ihr komm <u>t</u> (plural)
schreiben	schreib-	du schreib <u>st</u> (singular) ihr schreib <u>t</u> (plural)

What is the singular familiar form of sagen?

What is the singular familiar form of singen?

What is the plural familiar form of singen?

Say both the singular and plural familiar forms on the basis of formation rules you have just studied. For example:

You see and hear: bleiben

You say: du bleibst, ihr bleibt

1. lieben
2. gehen
3. bringen
4. trinken

If the verb stem itself ends in -s, -ss, -z, or -x, only -t is added in the second person singular (du) form. For example, consider the verb reisen. The verb stem is reis-, and since it ends in -s, only -t is added in the du form:

du reist.

Verbs which have a vowel change from -e → -i (ie) in the third person singular (er, sie, es) form have the same change in the second person singular (du) form. Thus, the verb geben, whose third person singular form is (er) gibt, has the singular familiar form: (du) gibst.

The plural familiar form, however, does not have any vowel change: ihr gebt.

Say the German, giving both the singular and plural forms. For example:

You see and hear: he hört

You say: du hilfst, ihr helft

Note that all of these verbs have a vowel change in the singular.

1. sehen
2. lesen
3. treffen
4. sprechen
5. nehmen

Verbs which have a vowel change in the third person singular from -a → -ä and from -au → -äu follow the same pattern in the second person singular (du) form. (Again, the plural familiar [ihr] form does not have any vowel change.) Continue the exercise with the following verbs:

6. fahren
7. laufen
8. tragen
9. waschen
10. gefallen

Certain verbs have verb stems which would give rise to pronunciation problems if -st or -t were simply added to them. For example, consider öffnen. If -st and -t were added to the stem, it would be difficult even for native speakers of German to pronounce them:

(\*)du öffnst                      (\*)ihr öffnet

(Here and elsewhere, the symbol (\*) will be used with any words or sentences used for teaching purposes which are NOT correct German forms and which should thus not be practiced actively.)

To facilitate pronunciation in these cases, the helping vowel -e- is inserted between the stem and ending. Thus, the correct familiar forms of öffnen (which you will notice are much easier to pronounce), are:

du öffnest                      ihr öffnet  
 (öffn-e-st)                      (öffn-e-t)

Verbs which require the helping vowel -e- are those whose verb stem ends in:

-d                      (finden)      du findest  
   ihr findet

-t                      (arbeiten)    du arbeitest  
   ihr arbeitet

or a consonant followed by -m or -n, as in the öffnen example shown above.

Listen to and repeat the following singular and plural familiar forms of verbs which add the helping vowel -e-:

- |                           |               |               |
|---------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. (baden)                | du badest     | ihr badet     |
| 2. (öffnen)               | du öffnest    | ihr öffnet    |
| 3. (arbeiten)             | du arbeitest  | ihr arbeitet  |
| 4. (finden)               | du findest    | ihr findet    |
| 5. (melden)               | du meldest    | ihr meldet    |
| 6. (bitten)               | du bittest    | ihr bittet    |
| 7. (landen)<br>= to land) | du landest    | ihr landet    |
| 8. (schneiden)            | du schneidest | ihr schneidet |
| 9. (redet)                | du redest     | ihr redet     |

NOTES



Fill in the blanks with the appropriate present tense verb form. This exercise includes both verbs with "regular" familiar forms and verbs which have a vowel change.

1. (helfen) du \_\_\_\_\_
2. (geben) ihr \_\_\_\_\_
3. (laufen) du \_\_\_\_\_
4. (schreiben) ihr \_\_\_\_\_
5. (treffen) du \_\_\_\_\_
6. (gefallen) ihr \_\_\_\_\_
7. (gehen) du \_\_\_\_\_
8. (tragen) du \_\_\_\_\_
9. (waschen) ihr \_\_\_\_\_
10. (sagen) du \_\_\_\_\_
11. (essen) ihr \_\_\_\_\_
12. (lesen) du \_\_\_\_\_
13. (bleiben) ihr \_\_\_\_\_
14. (fahren) du \_\_\_\_\_

This exercise combines all the verb forms you have studied in this section. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate familiar form of the verb shown in parentheses.

1. (sein) \_\_\_\_\_ du mein Kamerad?
2. (fragen) Ihr \_\_\_\_\_ die Mutter.
3. (helfen) \_\_\_\_\_ du mir morgen?
4. (haben) Du \_\_\_\_\_ ein schönes Auto.
5. (antworten) \_\_\_\_\_ ihr dem Lehrer oft?
6. (tragen) Du \_\_\_\_\_ einen neuen Mantel.
7. (laufen) Ihr \_\_\_\_\_ schnell um die Ecke.
8. (baden) Du \_\_\_\_\_ das Kind.
9. (fahren) \_\_\_\_\_ du morgen nach Köln?
10. (öffnen) Ihr \_\_\_\_\_ die Tür.
11. (sagen) \_\_\_\_\_ du es dem Vater?
12. (schreiben) Ihr \_\_\_\_\_ Schülerin.
13. (geben) Du \_\_\_\_\_ mir das Buch.
14. (haben) Ihr \_\_\_\_\_ ein schönes Haus.
15. (sein) \_\_\_\_\_ ihr morgen zu Hause?
16. (bitten) Du \_\_\_\_\_ den Lehrer um das Buch.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. hilfst
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. gebt
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. läufst
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. schreibt
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. triffst
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. gefällt
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. gehst
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. trägst
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. wascht
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. sagst
- \_\_\_\_\_ 11. esst
- \_\_\_\_\_ 12. liest
- \_\_\_\_\_ 13. bleibt
- \_\_\_\_\_ 14. fährst

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Bist
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. fragt
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Hilfst
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. hast
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Antwortet
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. trägst
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. läuft
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. badest
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. Fährst
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. öffnet
- \_\_\_\_\_ 11. Sagst
- \_\_\_\_\_ 12. schreibt
- \_\_\_\_\_ 13. gibst
- \_\_\_\_\_ 14. habt
- \_\_\_\_\_ 15. Seid
- \_\_\_\_\_ 16. bittest

START THE TAPE.

## Section 2

### Familiar Forms of Separable

### Prefix Verbs and Modal Auxiliary Verbs

The familiar forms of separable prefix verbs (Lesson 7) and modal auxiliary verbs (Lesson 9) use the same endings as the simple verbs in the preceding section. Indeed, the only difference in the case of separable prefix verbs is that the prefix is removed from the front of the verb and placed at the end of the sentence or clause.

You are already familiar with this pattern in sentences using the personal pronouns ich, er, sie, es, etc. For example, "He opens the door," using the separable prefix verb aufmachen, would be:

Er macht die Tür auf.

How would you say "You open the door" in German, using the singular familiar form?

How would you say "You open the door," using the plural familiar form?

Some separable prefix verbs have a vowel change in the third person singular. In these cases, the same change occurs in the singular familiar form, as we have seen in the preceding section.

Listen to and repeat the following sentences, noticing the placement of the separable prefix and the umlaut or other vowel change in the singular form of the familiar. Note again that the plural form does not have a vowel change.

1. (abfahren) Du fährst morgen ab.  
Ihr fahrt morgen ab.
2. (mitnehmen) Du nimmst das Kind mit.  
Ihr nehmt das Kind mit.
3. (anfangen) Du fängst mit der Arbeit an.  
Ihr fangt mit der Arbeit an.
4. (hergeben) Du gibst das Geld her.  
Ihr gebt das Geld her.
5. (vorbeilassen) Du lässt den Herrn vorbei.  
Ihr lasst den Herrn vorbei.

**NOTES**

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of the verb in parentheses. Note that both "regular" and "vowel-changing" verbs are used.

1. (abfahren) Du \_\_\_\_\_ heute abend \_\_\_\_\_.
2. (aufmachen) Ihr \_\_\_\_\_ den Brief \_\_\_\_\_.
3. (aufschreiben) Du \_\_\_\_\_ den Satz \_\_\_\_\_.
4. (anziehen) Du \_\_\_\_\_ den Mantel \_\_\_\_\_.
5. (anstehen) Ihr \_\_\_\_\_ vor dem Kino \_\_\_\_\_.
6. (vorbeilassen) Du \_\_\_\_\_ das Auto \_\_\_\_\_.
7. (anbieten) \_\_\_\_\_ ihr ihm ein Glas Wein  
\_\_\_\_\_?
8. (wiedersehen) Du \_\_\_\_\_ das Mädchen bald  
\_\_\_\_\_.
9. (zurückgeben) \_\_\_\_\_ du das Buch \_\_\_\_\_?
10. (mitbringen) Ihr \_\_\_\_\_ das Kind \_\_\_\_\_.
11. (abholen) Du \_\_\_\_\_ meinen Vater \_\_\_\_\_.
12. (ansehen) \_\_\_\_\_ du ihn \_\_\_\_\_?

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

START THE TAPE.

Say the entire German sentence, replacing the plural familiar form with the singular familiar form. Note that both "regular" and "vowel-changing" verbs are used.

You see: Ihr bringt den Fussball mit.

You say: Du bringst den Fussball mit.

1. Ihr fahrt morgen nach München ab.
2. Ihr lasst die Dame vorbei.
3. Ihr schreibt den Satz auf.
4. Holt ihr den Vater ab?
5. Ihr gebt das Geld zurück.
6. Ihr nehmt das Kind mit.
7. Ihr fangt mit der Arbeit an.
8. Ihr geht mit der Mutter spazieren.
9. Kommt ihr heute abend zurück?
10. Ihr macht die Tür zu.
11. Schenkt ihr ihnen Kaffee ein?

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. fährst .... ab
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. macht .... auf
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. schreibst .... auf
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. ziehst .... an
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. steht .... an
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. lässt .... vorbei
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Bietet .... an
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. siehst .... wieder
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. Gibst .... zurück
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. bringt .... mit
- \_\_\_\_\_ 11. holst .... ab
- \_\_\_\_\_ 12. Siehst .... an

The plural familiar form of sollen is: ihr sollt, as derived in the following way:

<u>Infinitive</u>	<u>Stem</u>	<u>Plural Familiar</u>
sollen	soll-	(ihr) sol <u>lt</u>

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of the modal auxiliary verb shown in parentheses:

1. (können) ihr \_\_\_\_\_
2. (wollen) ihr \_\_\_\_\_
3. (mögen) ihr \_\_\_\_\_
4. (sollen) ihr \_\_\_\_\_
5. (dürfen) ihr \_\_\_\_\_
6. (müssen) ihr \_\_\_\_\_

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

The familiar forms of modal auxiliary verbs also use the same -st or -t endings we have seen with simple verbs and separable prefix verbs. In the familiar plural, a -t is added to the infinitive stem, as you have learned in the preceding section. What is the plural familiar form of sollen?

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. könnt
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. wollt
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. mögt
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. sollt
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. dürft
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. müsst

START THE TAPE.

NOTES

The singular familiar forms for the modal auxiliary verbs follow a slightly different pattern in that the -st ending is added to the third person singular (er, sie, es) form of the verb, rather than to the stem. Thus, for a given modal auxiliary verb you should simply think of the full "er" form, to which you would add -st. For example:

<u>Infinitive</u>	<u>"Er" Form</u>	<u>Singular Familiar</u>
dürfen	er darf	du darfst

One exception to this principle is müssen. Since the "er" form (er muss) already has plenty of S's, only a -t is added in the singular familiar:

müssen	er muss	du musst
--------	---------	----------

Fill in the blanks with the singular familiar forms of the modal auxiliary verb.

1. (wollen) du \_\_\_\_\_
2. (mögen) du \_\_\_\_\_
3. (sollen) du \_\_\_\_\_
4. (dürfen) du \_\_\_\_\_
5. (können) du \_\_\_\_\_
6. (müssen) du \_\_\_\_\_

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

NOTES

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. willst
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. magst
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. sollst
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. darfst
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. kannst
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. musst

NOTES



Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of the familiar singular or plural on the basis of the verbs in parentheses.

1. (dürfen) \_\_\_\_\_ du mitkommen?
2. (sollen) Ihr \_\_\_\_\_ ihn anrufen.
3. (mögen) Du \_\_\_\_\_ ihn nicht.
4. (müssen) \_\_\_\_\_ ihr heute zur Schule gehen?
5. (können) Du \_\_\_\_\_ die Tür zumachen.
6. (wollen) \_\_\_\_\_ ihr im Restaurant essen?
7. (dürfen) Ihr \_\_\_\_\_ nicht ins Kino gehen.
8. (sollen) \_\_\_\_\_ du ihm schreiben?
9. (mögen) Ihr \_\_\_\_\_ den Kuchen nicht essen.
10. (müssen) Du \_\_\_\_\_ der Mutter antworten.
11. (können) \_\_\_\_\_ ihr heute abend kommen?
12. (wollen) Du \_\_\_\_\_ Deutsch lernen.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate familiar singular or plural form of the verb in parentheses.

1. (können) Ihr .... zu Hause bleiben.
2. (dürfen) Du .... nicht rauchen.
3. (müssen) .... ihr morgen nach Köln fahren?
4. (mögen) Ihr .... keinen Kaffee.
5. (sollen) Du .... morgen kommen.
6. (wollen) .... du nach Amerika reisen?
7. (können) .... du mir helfen?
8. (mögen) Du .... den Wein nicht.
9. (wollen) .... ihr mitfahren?
10. (müssen) .... du morgen arbeiten?
11. (dürfen) Ihr .... Bier trinken.
12. (sollen) .... ihr das Buch mitbringen?

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

NOTES

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Darfst
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. sollt
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. magst
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Müsst
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. kannst
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Wollt
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. dürft
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Sollst
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. mögt
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. musst
- \_\_\_\_\_ 11. Könnt
- \_\_\_\_\_ 12. willst

### Section 3

#### Familiar Imperatives

In Lesson 7, you learned to use the imperative (command) form of verbs in formal address, that is, in speaking to persons whom you would customarily address using the pronoun Sie. In this section, you will learn the familiar imperative forms, which are used in speaking to persons whom you would address using du (when speaking to only one person) or ihr (when speaking to more than one person).

You will remember that the formal imperative is formed by reversing the position of the pronoun Sie and the corresponding verb. Thus, the declarative sentence:

Sie bleiben hier.  
(You [formal] are staying here.)

would be changed into the imperative form:

Bleiben Sie hier! (Stay here!)

The familiar imperative (both singular and plural) differs from the formal imperative in that it does NOT use a personal pronoun. Thus, the declarative sentence:

Ihr bleibt hier.  
(You [plural, familiar] are staying here.)

is rephrased as an imperative simply by dropping the personal pronoun entirely:

Bleibt hier! (Stay here!)

(As with all imperative constructions, an exclamation point is added in written German.)

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate imperative form of the verb in parentheses. Note that only plural forms are used in this exercise.

1. (gehen) Paul und Maria, \_\_\_\_\_ nach Hause!
2. (aufstehen) \_\_\_\_\_ um 6 Uhr \_\_\_\_\_!
3. (essen) Hans und Karl, \_\_\_\_\_ das Frühstück!
4. (bleiben) \_\_\_\_\_ heute zu Hause!
5. (mitnehmen) Inge und Franz, \_\_\_\_\_ die Zeitung \_\_\_\_\_!
6. (fahren) \_\_\_\_\_ nicht nach Köln!
7. (zeigen) \_\_\_\_\_ dem Herrn die Schule!
8. (anrufen) Karla und Peter, \_\_\_\_\_ den Vater \_\_\_\_\_!
9. (suchen) \_\_\_\_\_ das Buch!
10. (danken) \_\_\_\_\_ der Mutter!

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

The singular familiar imperative is usually formed by using the appropriate ("du") form of the verb without the personal ending.

For example, the declarative sentence:

Du gehst nach Hause.

would be turned into the imperative by dropping the pronoun and also the -st ending of the "du" form:

Geh nach Hause!

How would you change Du fragst den Lehrer into the imperative?

NOTES

1. geht
2. Steht .... auf
3. esst
4. Bleibt
5. nehmt .... mit
6. Fahrt
7. Zeigt
8. ruft .... an
9. Sucht
10. Dankt

START THE TAPE.

You would say Frag den Lehrer!

Please note that verbs which have a vowel change from -a → -äu and -au → -äu drop the umlaut in the imperative "du" form, thus restoring the original stem vowel.

Du fährst nach Köln. but Fahr nach Köln!

Du läufst zur Schule. but Lauf zur Schule!

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate singular familiar imperative form of the verb in parentheses.

1. (kommen) Hans, \_\_\_\_\_ nach Hause!
2. (fragen) Inge, \_\_\_\_\_ den Lehrer!
3. (fahren) \_\_\_\_\_ nicht nach München!
4. (laufen) \_\_\_\_\_ schnell zur Schule!
5. (gehen) Karl, \_\_\_\_\_ ins Kino!
6. (waschen) \_\_\_\_\_ das Kind!
7. (tragen) \_\_\_\_\_ den Koffer!

START THE TAPE.

In Section 1, you learned that some verbs add the helping vowel -e- in the "du" form to facilitate pronunciation, as in:

du arbeitest (arbeit-e-st).

These verbs keep the -e in the singular familiar imperative, even though the -st ending is dropped. What is the singular familiar imperative form of öffnen?

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate singular familiar imperative form of the verb in parentheses.

1. (baden) Maria, \_\_\_\_\_ das Kind!
2. (öffnen) \_\_\_\_\_ das Fenster!
3. (antworten) Paula, \_\_\_\_\_ dem Vater!
4. (melden) \_\_\_\_\_ es dem Offizier!
5. (arbeiten) \_\_\_\_\_ nicht so viel!

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. komm
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. frag
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Fahr
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Lauf
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. geh
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Wasch
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Trag

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. bade
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. Öffne
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. antworte
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Melde
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Arbeite

NOTES

START THE TAPE.

Verbs which use the helping vowel -e- in the "du" form must keep this vowel in the imperative. In formal German style, both written and spoken, other verbs may add an -e in the familiar imperative singular form, as shown in the examples below. Listen and repeat:

1. (kommen) Komm nach Hause! Komme nach Hause!
2. (fahren) Fahr nach Berlin! Fahre nach Berlin!
3. (anrufen) Ruf sie an! Rufe sie an!
4. (abholen) Hol Herrn Meyer ab! Hole Herrn Meyer ab!
5. (gehen) Geh ins Kino! Gehe ins Kino!

For purposes of this lesson, we will expect you to use an -e only in familiar forms which require it, that is, verbs which insert an -e- in the "du" form for ease of pronunciation.

Note, by the way, that those verbs which have a vowel change from -e to -i or -ie never add an -e- in the familiar imperative singular form. Listen and repeat:

1. (lesen) Lies den Satz!
2. (geben) Gib ihm die Zeitung!
3. (nehmen) Nimm meinen Bleistift!

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate imperative form of the verb in parentheses. Note that only singular forms are used.

1. (gehen) \_\_\_\_\_ nach Hause!
2. (bleiben) \_\_\_\_\_ morgen hier!
3. (vorbeilassen) \_\_\_\_\_ den Herrn \_\_\_\_\_!
4. (schreiben) \_\_\_\_\_ dem Vater!
5. (fragen) \_\_\_\_\_ den Lehrer!
6. (sagen) \_\_\_\_\_ es dem Nachbarn!
7. (bringen) \_\_\_\_\_ das Buch!
8. (vorbeikommen) \_\_\_\_\_ heute abend \_\_\_\_\_!
9. (anfangen) \_\_\_\_\_ mit der Arbeit \_\_\_\_\_!
10. (glauben) \_\_\_\_\_ dem Freund!
11. (tragen) \_\_\_\_\_ das Buch ins Wohnzimmer!
12. (nehmen) \_\_\_\_\_ mein Auto!
13. (geben) \_\_\_\_\_ mir das Lehrbuch!

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Geh
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. Bleib
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Lass .... vorbei
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Schreib
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Frag
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Sag
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Bring
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Komm .... vorbei
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. Fang .... an
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. Glaub
- \_\_\_\_\_ 11. Trag
- \_\_\_\_\_ 12. Nimm
- \_\_\_\_\_ 13. Gib

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, incorporating the verbs in parentheses. Use the singular familiar imperative.

1. (holen) .... das Tonbandgerät!
2. (kommen) .... ins Haus!
3. (einladen) .... den Freund ....!
4. (mitbringen) .... einen Mantel ....!
5. (mitfahren) .... nach München ....!
6. (parken) .... den Sportwagen!
7. (zumachen) .... das Fenster ....!
8. (lesen) .... das Buch!
9. (geben) .... mir bitte ein Glas Wein!
10. (laufen) .... ins Haus!
11. (waschen) .... das Auto!
12. (helfen) .... der Dame!
13. (antworten) .... dem Herrn!
14. (danken) .... dem Vater!



Familiar Address II

This is the second of two lessons on the forms and uses of the familiar address in German. The following sections are included:

1. Dative and Accusative Cases of the Familiar Personal Pronouns
2. Familiar Possessive Adjectives

You have already learned the polite (formal) personal pronouns in the dative case. How would you say "I give you the book" using formal address?

Now, if you were giving the book to a child or to a relative or close friend, you would use the familiar dative personal pronoun, which is dir in the singular and euch in the plural. Thus, speaking familiarly to one person, you would say:

Ich gebe dir das Buch.

Speaking familiarly to more than one person, you would say:

Ich gebe euch das Buch.

Listen to and repeat the following sentences. Notice that both the singular and plural dative familiar pronouns are used, depending on the number of persons being addressed. The dative case is required because the pronouns are indirect objects or because they follow prepositions or verbs which require the dative.

1. Hans, ich zeige dir die Stadt.
2. Paula und Maria, verkauft er euch den Wagen?
3. Inge, wir sprechen mit dir.
4. Peter und Karl, wir wollen euch helfen.
5. Fritz und Paul, wir geben euch ein Bild.
6. Ursula, wir bringen dir eine Tasse Kaffee.
7. Ingrid und Franz, leiht er euch das Geld?
8. Wir kommen gern zu euch.

Say the entire German sentence, using dir or euch as appropriate.

1. Max, ich glaube ....
2. Helmut und Ingrid, ich danke ....
3. Vater, ich schenke .... ein Glas Bier ein.
4. Mutter, wir schenken .... Blumen.
5. Gisela und Jutta, wir schreiben .... nicht oft.
6. Walter und Gudrun, wir bringen .... Kuchen.
7. Günther und Jürgen, ich hole .... einen Ball.
8. Mein Freund, ich will mit .... sprechen.

## NOTES

The familiar personal pronouns also have an accusative case form which is used whenever this case is required. The plural accusative form is easy to remember because it is the same as the plural dative form. How would you say "I see you" in German, using familiar address and speaking to more than one person?

You would say "Ich sehe euch."

The singular accusative familiar form of the personal pronoun is dich. How would you say "I see you" in German, talking familiarly to a single person?

You would say "Ich sehe dich."

Say complete German sentences, using dich or euch as appropriate. Note that the accusative case is required because the pronouns are direct objects or because they follow prepositions or verbs which require the accusative.

1. Vater, ich hole .... ab.
2. Gisela und Jutta, ich kaufe ein Buch für ....
3. Hans, ich sehe .... morgen in der Stadt.
4. Wolfgang und Anna, dürfen wir .... besuchen?
5. Kind, der Vater nimmt .... mit.
6. Maria und Ursula, ich treffe .... vor dem Kino.
7. Trude, ich sehe .... morgen abend.

Fill in the blanks, using the appropriate familiar form of the personal pronoun. Note that both dative and accusative forms are required, as well as singular and plural.

NOTES

1. Vater und Mutter, wir helfen \_\_\_\_\_ gern.
2. Fritz und Paul, wir gehen ohne \_\_\_\_\_ aus.
3. Hans, ich hole \_\_\_\_\_ heute abend ab.
4. Vater und Karl, ich zeige \_\_\_\_\_ das Haus.
5. Maria, ich öffne \_\_\_\_\_ die Tür.
6. Olga und Ingrid, wir schenken \_\_\_\_\_ ein Bild.
7. Rudi and Klaus, wir fahren mit \_\_\_\_\_ auf Urlaub.
8. Jutta, ich besuche \_\_\_\_\_ morgen.
9. Peter, ich trinke ein Glas Bier mit \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Heinz und Inge, wir besuchen \_\_\_\_\_ bald.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

NOTES

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. euch
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. euch
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. dich
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. euch
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. dir
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. euch
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. euch
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. dich
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. dir
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. euch

START THE TAPE.

## Section 2

### Familiar Possessive Adjectives

In Lesson 3, you learned the possessive adjectives corresponding to the English "my," "her," "his," "their," and so forth. You also learned a possessive adjective for "your," as used in sentences such as:

Frau Schmidt, Ihr Kaffee ist gut.

(Mrs. Smith, your coffee is good.)

This form, Ihr, is of course the formal possessive adjective for "your," used to address one person or more than one person.

Suppose that you wished to convey the same sentence, speaking to a good friend with whom you use familiar address. You would say:

Maria, dein Kaffee ist gut.

As with all possessive adjectives, the form of the familiar possessive adjective must correspond to the gender, case, and number of the noun it modifies. The appropriate form is that of the "kein" words which you have already learned.

How would you say "Maria, your apartment is beautiful," using familiar address?

You would say Maria, deine Wohnung ist schön. Since Wohnung is a feminine noun, the possessive adjective must be in the corresponding feminine form. What is the grammatical case of Wohnung in the preceding example?

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of the familiar possessive adjective. Note that only nominative singular forms are called for, although nouns of different genders are used.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Mutter fährt nach Berlin.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ Vater ist im Büro.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ Frau hilft dir immer.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ Auto ist nicht mehr neu.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Freundin ist sehr nett.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ Nachbar besucht mich oft.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ Buch liegt auf dem Stuhl.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ Urlaub beginnt morgen.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ Zimmer ist sauber.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ Nachbarin fährt nach Amerika.
11. \_\_\_\_\_ Kind ist jetzt in der Schule.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Deine
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. Dein
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Deine
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Dein
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Deine
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Dein
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Dein
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Dein
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. Dein
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. Deine
- \_\_\_\_\_ 11. Dein

START THE TAPE.

Whereas the formal possessive adjective Ihr has only a single "base" form to which endings are added, regardless of whether one person or more than one person is being addressed, the familiar possessive adjective has two different base forms, one to be used when addressing one person, and another to be used when addressing more than one person.

You have just studied the "one-person-being-addressed" form dein. The form used in addressing more than one person in a familiar way is euer. Euer follows the same pattern of endings as the "kein" words. Thus, how would you translate "Hans and Inge, your father is here"?

You would say:

Hans und Inge, euer Vater ist hier.

Whenever the base form euer adds an ending, the -e- before the -r in the base form is usually dropped to facilitate pronunciation. For example, the feminine form of euer (in the nominative case) requires an -e ending, as would any other adjective modifying a singular feminine noun in the nominative case. However, before adding the -e ending, the -e- before the -r in the base form is dropped:

<u>Base Form</u>	<u>Base Form with -e- before -r Dropped</u>	<u>Base Form with Appropriate Adjective Ending</u>
<u>euer</u>	<u>eur-</u>	<u>eure</u>

An example sentence:

Hans und Inge, eure Mutter ist hier.

Fill in the blanks, using the correct familiar form of the possessive adjective. Assume that you are addressing more than one person.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Freund ist Soldat.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ Tochter ist Schülerin.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ Auto steht vor dem Haus.
4. Besucht \_\_\_\_\_ Mutter euch bald?
5. Verkauft \_\_\_\_\_ Vater sein Auto?
6. \_\_\_\_\_ Lehrerin liest ein Buch.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ Garten ist schön.
8. Lernt \_\_\_\_\_ Kind Deutsch?
9. \_\_\_\_\_ Bild ist interessant.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

So far, you have practiced using the familiar possessive adjectives in the nominative case. In the dative and accusative cases, the familiar possessive adjectives continue to follow the pattern of the "kein" words in these cases.

Study the following table, noticing the similarity between the forms of mein (a "kein" word possessive adjective you learned in Lesson 2) and the corresponding forms of dein and uer. Note also the omission of the -e- in uer whenever an ending is added.

<u>Masculine</u>	<u>Feminine</u>	<u>Neuter</u>
NOMINATIVE		
mein Vater	meine Mutter	mein Kind
dein Vater	deine Mutter	dein Kind
uer Vater	eure Mutter	euer Kind
DATIVE		
meinem Vater	meiner Mutter	meinem Kind
deinem Vater	deiner Mutter	deinem Kind
eurem Vater	eurer Mutter	eurem Kind
ACCUSATIVE		
meinen Vater	meine Mutter	mein Kind
deinen Vater	deine Mutter	dein Kind
euren Vater	eure Mutter	euer Kind

START THE TAPE.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

NOTES

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Euer
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. Eure
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Euer
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. eure
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. euer
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Eure
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Euer
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. euer
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. Euer

START THE TAPE.



We will now practice sentences using possessive adjectives in the dative case. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate familiar possessive adjective. Pay particular attention to whether dein or euer is used (depending on the number of persons being addressed) and the underlying reason for the use of the dative case (indirect objects, prepositions or verbs which require the dative).

1. Karl und Peter, ihr fahrt mit \_\_\_\_\_ Vater auf Urlaub.
2. Rudolf, ich danke \_\_\_\_\_ Frau für den Kuchen.
3. Trude, du wohnst bei \_\_\_\_\_ Mutter.
4. Stefan und Karin, ihr helft \_\_\_\_\_ Lehrerin.
5. Werner, fährst du mit \_\_\_\_\_ Klassenkameraden nach Hause?
6. Paul und Inge, habt ihr einen Brief von \_\_\_\_\_ Vater?
7. Otto, jeden Morgen sprechen wir mit \_\_\_\_\_ Nachbarn.
8. Michael und Käthe, wohnt ihr immer noch bei \_\_\_\_\_ Lehrerin?
9. Mathilde, gib \_\_\_\_\_ Freundin die Illustrierte zurück!
0. Ursula und Christa, schreibt \_\_\_\_\_ Vater!

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate familiar possessive adjective in the accusative case.

1. Vater, kann ich \_\_\_\_\_ Sportwagen benutzen?
2. Ingrid und Franz, warum wollt ihr denn \_\_\_\_\_ Haus verkaufen?
3. Andreas, willst du \_\_\_\_\_ Auto verkaufen?
4. Monika und Fritz, wo verbringt ihr \_\_\_\_\_ Urlaub?
5. Erwin, siehst du \_\_\_\_\_ Freundin oft?
6. Peter und Max, ruft sofort \_\_\_\_\_ Bruder!
7. Wolfgang und Hanna, wir bitten um \_\_\_\_\_ Antwort.
8. Hermann, kannst du mir \_\_\_\_\_ Bleistift leihen?
9. Elisabeth, du sollst \_\_\_\_\_ Nachbarin im Büro anrufen.
10. Anna, leih mir \_\_\_\_\_ Füllhalter!

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. eurem
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. deiner
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. deiner
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. eurer
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. deinem
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. eurem
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. deinem
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. eurer
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. deiner
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. eurem

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. deinen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. euer
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. dein
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. euren
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. deine
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. euren
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. eure
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. deinen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. deine
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. deinen

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, using the appropriate form of the familiar possessive adjective. Note that nominative, dative, and accusative forms are called for.

1. Hans, besuchst du .... Freundin?
2. Peter und Fritz, ihr habt einen Brief von .... Mutter.
3. Olga und Paul, bringt ihr .... Kind zum Arzt?
4. Maria, hilf .... Mutter!
5. Albert, bringst du .... Kameraden mit?
6. Heinz, du sollst .... Freund abholen.
7. Ilse und Max, ihr müsst .... Lehrer danken.
8. Gertrud, bleib in .... Zimmer!
9. Josef, willst du .... Freundin anrufen?
10. Ingrid und Franz, glaubt ihr .... Kind?
11. Walter, bekommst du oft Geld von .... Vater?
12. Hermann und Klara, ladet ihr .... Lehrerin ein?
13. Horst und Dieter, helft .... Vater!
14. Elke, ist .... Kind schon in der Schule?
15. Paul und Helga, .... Haus ist sehr schön.
16. Hans und Walter, wollt ihr .... Mutter abholen?
17. Maria, kannst du .... Kind nicht finden?
18. Franz und Erika, wollt ihr .... Haus verkaufen?

Up to now, you have studied those familiar possessive adjectives which are used with singular nouns, for example:

Karl, verkaufst du deinen Sportwagen?

(Karl, are you selling your sports car?)

Suppose now that you wanted to form a sentence using a possessive adjective with a plural noun, such as the German equivalent of:

Karl, are you selling your sports cars?

In such a case, you would have to use a plural form of the possessive adjective to agree with the plural noun (that is, with the "things possessed").

The appropriate possessive adjective is deine in both the nominative and accusative cases, and deinen in the dative case. The same forms are used in all genders.

Remember that the same pattern of endings applies as those used with kein when preceding a plural noun:

Das sind keine Sportwagen.

(Those are no sports cars.)

Er verkauft keine Sportwagen.

(He does not sell any sports cars.)

Wir fahren mit keinen Sportwagen.

(We do not drive in any sports cars.)

On the basis of the preceding, what is the German for:

Karl, are you selling your sports cars?

This would be: Karl, verkaufst du deine Sportwagen?

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate possessive adjective. Note that the "things possessed" are plural nouns.

1. Maria, schreibst du \_\_\_\_\_ Freunden oft?
2. Helga, bringst du \_\_\_\_\_ Kinder zur Schule?
3. Hermann, ich lese gern in \_\_\_\_\_ Büchern.
4. Karla, trinkst du mit \_\_\_\_\_ Freundinnen Wein?
5. Klaus, wo sind \_\_\_\_\_ Bleistifte?
6. Franz, ich kenne \_\_\_\_\_ Klassenkameraden noch nicht.
7. Fritz, ich möchte mit \_\_\_\_\_ Lehrerinnen sprechen.
8. Anna, leihst du \_\_\_\_\_ Bekannten oft Geld?
9. Karl, sind \_\_\_\_\_ Lehrer gut?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- |       |           |
|-------|-----------|
| _____ | 1. deinen |
| _____ | 2. deine  |
| _____ | 3. deinen |
| _____ | 4. deinen |
| _____ | 5. deine  |
| _____ | 6. deine  |
| _____ | 7. deinen |
| _____ | 8. deinen |
| _____ | 9. deine  |

START THE TAPE.

In the preceding exercise, the "things possessed" were in the plural (i.e., were plural nouns), but the person being addressed was in every case singular (Maria, Helga, Vater, etc.).

Now suppose that you wished to address more than one person while referring to several "things possessed." To do this, you would use the root form euer, to which you would add the same plural endings you just learned with dein, again remembering the analogy with the kein-endings. Specifically, you would use:

eure in the nominative and accusative cases  
(for all genders)

and

euren in the dative (all genders).

Note that the -e- before -r is omitted in both eure and euren.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate possessive adjective. Note that the "things possessed" are plural nouns.

1. Hans und Inge, trifft ihr \_\_\_\_\_ Freunde in München?
2. Max und Gertrud, schreibt ihr \_\_\_\_\_ Bekannten oft?
3. Fritz und Franz, wie geht es \_\_\_\_\_ Freundinnen?
4. Karl und Helga, gehen \_\_\_\_\_ Kinder schon zur Schule?
5. Paul und Willi, \_\_\_\_\_ Sportwagen gefallen mir.
6. Herbert und Anna, zeigt \_\_\_\_\_ Kindern die Stadt!
7. Anton und Walter, \_\_\_\_\_ Hände sind nicht sauber.
8. Ulrich und Peter, wisst ihr wo \_\_\_\_\_ Zeitungen sind?
9. Hermann und Josef, \_\_\_\_\_ Bücher sind sehr interessant.

In working through the following exercise, remember that it is the number of persons being addressed which determines whether a form of dein or euer should be used.

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of dein or euer.

1. Hans und Peter, wollt ihr \_\_\_\_\_ Bilder verkaufen?
2. Inge, kann ich \_\_\_\_\_ Bücher mitnehmen?
3. Meine Freunde, helft \_\_\_\_\_ Kameraden!
4. Karl und Maria, holt \_\_\_\_\_ Freunde ab!
5. Hermann, schreibst du \_\_\_\_\_ Freundinnen oft?
6. Karla, \_\_\_\_\_ Lehrerinnen sind sehr nett.
7. Franz, zeig \_\_\_\_\_ Kameraden die Stadt!
8. Fritz, hast du \_\_\_\_\_ Lehrbücher hier?
9. Liebe Freunde, kommt mit \_\_\_\_\_ Kindern!
10. Helga und Josef, \_\_\_\_\_ Kinder sind bei uns.
11. Kurt, \_\_\_\_\_ Lehrer kommen heute nicht.
12. Max und Peter, wo stehen \_\_\_\_\_ Autos?
13. Inge und Franz, bekommt ihr oft Briefe von \_\_\_\_\_ Kindern?

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. eure
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. euren
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. euren
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. eure
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. eure
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. euren
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. eure
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. eure
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. eure

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. eure
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. deine
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. euren
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. eure
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. deinen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. deine
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. deinen

- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. deine
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. euren
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. eure
- \_\_\_\_\_ 11. deine
- \_\_\_\_\_ 12. eure
- \_\_\_\_\_ 13. euren

START THE TAPE.

It will be useful at this point to review all the forms of the familiar possessive adjectives in the nominative, dative, and accusative cases. These are shown in the table below. When studying the table, remember that a form of dein is used when speaking to one person, and a form of euer is used when speaking to more than one person.

	<u>Referring to a single</u> <u>"thing possessed"</u> (i.e., a singular noun)			<u>Referring to several</u> <u>"things possessed"</u> (i.e., a plural noun)
	<u>Masc.</u>	<u>Fem.</u>	<u>Neut.</u>	<u>All Genders</u>
Nom.	dein euer	deine eure	dein euer	deine eure
Dat.	deinem eurem	deiner eurer	deinem eurem	deinen euren
Acc.	deinen euren	deine eure	dein euer	deine eure

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate familiar form of the possessive adjective. Note that all of the forms you have studied are used.

1. Peter, ich schreibe \_\_\_\_\_ Lehrer.
2. Klaus und Ingrid, warum wollt ihr \_\_\_\_\_ Haus verkaufen?
3. Kinder, trinkt \_\_\_\_\_ Milch!
4. Max, kannst du \_\_\_\_\_ Bekannten abholen?
5. Erika, \_\_\_\_\_ Blumen sind sehr schön.
6. Georg, fahr \_\_\_\_\_ Auto in die Garage!
7. Kinder, antwortet \_\_\_\_\_ Lehrerin!
8. Ilse, willst du \_\_\_\_\_ Freund zum Essen einladen?
9. Helmut und Maria, könnt ihr \_\_\_\_\_ Autos vor dem Haus parken?
10. Ingrid und Franz, gebt ihr \_\_\_\_\_ Kindern Schokolade?
11. Klaus und Lotte, ihr müsst \_\_\_\_\_ Kind schreiben.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

Say complete German sentences, using the appropriate familiar form of the possessive adjective.

1. Anna, was schenkst du .... Mutter zum Muttertag?
2. Maria und Klaus, .... Auto ist kaputt.
3. Karla, gib .... Kind die Blumen!
4. Ludwig, wie fährt .... Sportwagen?
5. Monika, .... Mutter will heute abend anrufen.
6. Peter und Luise, .... Lehrerin will euch besuchen.
7. Peter, bring .... Aktentasche mit!
8. Helga, gib .... Kind ein Glas Milch!
9. Fritz, hat .... Vater jetzt Urlaub?
10. Josef und Max, zeigt .... Lehrer die Hausaufgaben!
11. Luise und Paula, .... Freundinnen wollen mit euch spielen.
12. Michael und Martha, liebt ihr .... Kind?
13. Karl, gib .... Eltern den Kuchen!
14. Peter, holst du .... Freund vom Bahnhof ab?
15. Hans, .... Auto steht in der Garage.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

NOTES

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. deinem
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. euer
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. eure
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. deine
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. deine
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. dein
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. eurer
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. deinen
  
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. eure
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. euren
- \_\_\_\_\_ 11. eurem



LESSON 13

Reflexives I

In this and the following Lesson, you will learn the use of reflexive constructions in German. The present lesson contains the following sections:

1. Introduction to Reflexive Constructions, including those with reciprocal meaning; Reflexive Constructions in the Accusative Case
2. Reflexive Constructions in the Dative Case
3. Reflexive Constructions with Separable Prefix Verbs

Lesson 14 (Reflexives II) will cover reflexive constructions in the imperative, use of the reflexive with modal auxiliary verbs, and special uses of the reflexive to refer to articles of clothing and parts of the body.

1. Introduction to Reflexive Constructions;  
Reflexive Constructions in the Accusative Case

Both English and German use so-called reflexive constructions, in which the action of the verb is in some sense targeted at the subject. Consider the following two sentences:

1. Er sieht die Frau. (He sees the woman.)
2. Er sieht sich. (He sees himself.)

In sentence 1, what object or person is the target of the verb sehen (that is, what is "seen"?)

The woman (die Frau) is the target of the verb sehen.

In sentence 2, what object or person is the target of the verb?

NOTES

In the second sentence, the subject of the verb is also its target, that is to say, the man sees himself. Here the action of the verb is reflexive.

For each of the following English sentences, state whether the action of the verb is reflexive or not reflexive.

1. Mr. Miller is selling his car.
2. The lady sees herself in the mirror.
3. The soldier is shaving himself.
4. Our friends are leaving tomorrow.
5. The children are dressing themselves.
6. He is writing a letter to his girl friend.

In English, reflexive constructions are usually accompanied by reflexive pronouns ("himself," "ourselves," etc.) as seen in the examples above. Occasionally, however, the reflexive pronoun may be omitted in English. For example, one might say "The soldier is shaving," with "himself" understood but not expressed.

In German, however, any sentence having a reflexive meaning **MUST** use a reflexive pronoun. Thus, a sentence such as "He is shaving" would have to be expressed in German as:

Er rasiert sich.

In sentences such as

Du siehst dich im Spiegel.

in what case would you expect the reflexive pronoun to be?

Listen to and repeat the following sentences, noticing the underlined reflexive pronoun and the English translation of the sentence.

#### SINGULAR

Ich sehe mich im Spiegel.  
(I see myself in the mirror.)

Du siehst dich (familiar) im Spiegel.  
(You see yourself in the mirror.)

Sie sehen sich (formal) im Spiegel.  
(You see yourself in the mirror.)

Er, sie, es sieht sich im Spiegel.

(He, [she, it] sees himself, [herself, itself] in the mirror.)

#### PLURAL

Wir sehen uns im Spiegel.  
(We see ourselves in the mirror.)

Ihr seht euch (familiar) im Spiegel.  
(You see yourselves in the mirror.)

Sie sehen sich (formal) im Spiegel.  
(You see yourselves in the mirror.)

Sie sehen sich im Spiegel.  
(They see themselves in the mirror.)

The reflexive pronoun would be in the accusative case, since the reflexive pronoun here functions grammatically as a direct object:

Du	siehst	dich ....
(You	see	yourself ....)
Subject	Verb	Direct Object

In fact, you may have noticed that the reflexive pronouns mich, dich, uns, and euch are exactly the same as the accusative case personal pronouns you learned in Lessons 8 and 12.

However, the single reflexive pronoun sich is used instead of the accusative pronouns ihn, sie, es ("him," "her," "it"), sie ("them"), and Sie (formal "you," singular and plural).

Study this page and the preceding pages until you feel you know the reflexive pronouns well, then turn the page for exercises on them.

Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate reflexive pronoun.

1. Du setzt .... auf das Fahrrad.
2. Es (das Kind) schneidet ....
3. Er trifft .... mit seinem Freund.
4. Sie [you] sehen .... jeden Tag.
5. Ich lege .... auf das Sofa.

6. Sie amüsiert .... im Urlaub.
7. Sie [they] rasieren .... nur abends.
8. Ihr wascht .... nie.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate reflexive pronoun.

1. Er wäscht \_\_\_\_\_ nicht oft.
2. Rasierst du \_\_\_\_\_ jeden Morgen?
3. Ich setze \_\_\_\_\_ nicht auf dieses Sofa.
4. Sie [you] stellen \_\_\_\_\_ vor das Kino.
5. Wir amüsieren \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Sie schneidet \_\_\_\_\_ in den Finger.
7. Es (das Kind) legt \_\_\_\_\_ auf den Rasen.
8. Sie [they] treffen \_\_\_\_\_ vor der Schule.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. sich
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. dich
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. mich
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. sich
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. uns
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. sich
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. sich
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. sich

START THE TAPE.  
NOTES

So far in this module, you have worked with the following German reflexive expressions:

sich sehen	see oneself
sich rasieren	shave (oneself)
sich waschen	wash (oneself)
sich setzen	sit down (literally, to seat oneself)  as opposed to <u>sitzen</u> which denotes the state of being seated.
sich stellen	place oneself (implying motion)
sich amüsieren	have fun (literally, to amuse oneself)
sich legen	lie down (literally, to lay oneself down)
sich treffen	meet (of people)
sich schneiden	cut oneself

Again, you will note that the corresponding English expression is not necessarily reflexive, although the literal meaning usually has a reflexive or reciprocal force. The latter is true of the verb sich treffen (to meet each other, or one another, by prearrangement; to meet with):

Wir treffen uns in der Stadt.  
(We meet [each other] downtown.)

"Sich duzen" (to say "du" to one another) is another example of a reflexive verb with reciprocal meaning:

Sie duzen sich.  
(They say "du" to one another.)

In the preceding examples the object of the reciprocal action is implied. If the object of the action is to be expressed, this is frequently done by means of a prepositional phrase with mit:

Er trifft sich mit seinem Freund.  
(He meets [with] his friend; he and his friend meet each other.)

Duzt ihr euch mit euren Klassenkameraden?  
(Do you say "du" to your classmates; do you and your classmates say "du" to each other?)

Reflexive sentences with reciprocal meaning use the same reflexive pronouns and word order as do other reflexive constructions. Section 1 of Lesson 14 will review the differences in meaning between ordinary and reciprocal reflexive verbs.

Other reflexive verbs (with or without reciprocal meaning) are:

sich siezen	to say "Sie" to one another
sich entschuldigen	to apologize (literally to excuse oneself)
sich überzeugen	to convince oneself, see for oneself
sich kennen	to know one another

Please note that the infinitive of a reflexive verb is always preceded by the reflexive pronoun sich. Any additional elements making up a reflexive infinitive phrase go between the reflexive pronoun and the verb infinitive, such as:

sich morgens waschen

Study the above expressions (as well as those on the preceding page) until you feel you know them thoroughly, then turn the page for a written exercise.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate reflexive expression (verb plus reflexive pronoun) on the basis of the given English.

1. Hans and Inge say "du" to each other now.

Hans und Inge \_\_\_\_\_ jetzt.

2. You'll convince yourselves, for sure.

Ihr \_\_\_\_\_ bestimmt.

3. You excuse yourself.

Du \_\_\_\_\_.

4. We have fun on the weekend.

Wir \_\_\_\_\_ am Wochenende.

5. You sit down on the sofa.

Sie \_\_\_\_\_ auf das Sofa.

6. Peter and Maria still say "Sie" to each other.

Peter and Maria \_\_\_\_\_ immer noch.

7. The teacher [masc.] is placing himself behind the desk.

Der Lehrer \_\_\_\_\_ hinter das Pult.

8. I don't like to wash.

Ich \_\_\_\_\_ nicht gern.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. duzen sich
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. überzeugt euch
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. entschuldigst dich
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. amüsieren uns
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. setzen sich
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. siezen sich
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. stellt sich
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. wasche mich

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, using the appropriate reflexive expression (verb plus reflexive pronoun).

1. You know each other well.  
Ihr .... gut.
2. They shave every morning.  
Sie .... jeden Morgen.
3. We say "Sie" to our neighbors.  
Wir .... mit unseren Nachbarn.
4. The children are having fun in the garden.  
Die Kinder .... im Garten.
5. Do you meet your friend often?  
.... du .... oft mit deinem Freund?
6. I see myself in the mirror.  
Ich .... im Spiegel.
7. You never excuse yourself.  
Sie .... nie.
8. He always cuts himself when he works.  
Er .... immer, wenn er arbeitet.
9. She doesn't like to sit down on the sofa.  
Sie .... nicht gern auf das Sofa.
10. They place themselves in front of the restaurant.  
Sie .... vor das Restaurant.

Reflexive Constructions in the Dative Case

In the preceding section, you practiced a number of reflexive constructions in which the reflexive pronoun was in the accusative case because it was in a sense the direct object of the action expressed in the verb. For example:

Er amüsiert sich.

(He has fun [literally, amuses himself].)

There are a number of situations in which a reflexive construction would be called for, but would require the dative case rather than the accusative. Consider the following English example:

I am buying myself a new car.

In the above sentence, what person or thing is the direct object?

The direct object is "car."

If "car" is the direct object, what sort of object is the reflexive pronoun "myself" in this sentence?

"Myself" serves in this sentence as the indirect object because it denotes the person to or for whom something is being done. You might think of the example sentence as meaning literally "I am buying for myself a new car."

For each of the following English sentences, say whether the reflexive pronoun is a direct object or an indirect object.

1. He orders himself a glass of beer.
2. Mr. Meyer shaves himself every morning.
3. We are buying ourselves a television set.

As you know, indirect objects in German require the dative case. Thus, in sentences which use reflexive pronouns as indirect objects, the reflexive pronouns must be in the dative case form.

NOTES

Listen to and repeat the following sentences, noticing the underlined dative case reflexive pronoun and the English translation of the sentence.

SINGULAR

Ich kaufe mir ein Haus.

(I buy myself a house.)

Du kaufst dir (familiar) ein Haus.

(You buy yourself a house.)

Sie kaufen sich (formal) ein Haus.

(You buy yourself a house.)

Er, (sie, es) kauft sich ein Haus.

(He buys himself a house.)

PLURAL

Wir kaufen uns ein Haus.

(We buy ourselves a house.)

Ihr kauft euch (familiar) ein Haus.

(You buy yourselves a house.)

Sie kaufen sich (formal) ein Haus.

(You buy yourselves a house.)

Sie kaufen sich ein Haus.

(They buy themselves a house.)

You have probably noticed that the dative reflexive pronouns mir, dir, uns, and euch are identical to the corresponding dative case personal pronouns you learned in Lessons 5 and 12. The reflexive pronoun sich is used instead of ihm, ihr, and ihm ("him," "her," and "it"), ihnen ("them"), and Ihnen (formal "you," singular and plural).

The following table summarizes the accusative and dative reflexive pronouns:

<u>Subject Pronoun</u>	<u>Accusative Reflexive Pronoun</u>	<u>Dative Reflexive Pronoun</u>
ich	mich	mir
du	dich	dir
Sie	sich	sich
er, sie, es	sich	sich
wir	uns	uns
ihr	euch	euch
Sie	sich	sich
sie	sich	sich

START THE TAPE.



We will use the following verbs in practicing reflexive constructions which require the dative.

sich bestellen	to order (something) for oneself
sich nehmen	to take (something) for oneself
sich machen	to make (something) for oneself
sich kaufen	to buy (something) for oneself
sich helfen	to help oneself
sich holen	to get (something) for oneself
sich schreiben	to correspond, write to each other

Study the preceding list before going on to the next page.

**START THE TAPE.**

Reflexive constructions with dative reflexive pronouns are more common in German than in English. For example, where an English speaker might say "I am buying a newspaper" (with "for myself" understood) a German speaker in the same situation would usually include the dative reflexive pronoun:

Ich kaufe mir eine Zeitung.

In the following exercises, the "myself," "yourself," etc. pronouns will occasionally be omitted from the English sentences. However, when giving the German equivalents you should always use the appropriate German reflexive pronoun.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate reflexive expression (verb plus reflexive pronoun).

1. We order beer.

Wir \_\_\_\_\_ Bier.

2. Helga gets herself the newspaper.

Helga \_\_\_\_\_ die Zeitung.

3. The students make their breakfast.

Die Studenten \_\_\_\_\_ ihr Frühstück.

4. The lady buys herself a coat.

Die Dame \_\_\_\_\_ einen Mantel.

5. You are taking [yourself] a cigarette.

Sie \_\_\_\_\_ eine Zigarette.

6. Do you always make so much work for yourself?

\_\_\_\_\_ du \_\_\_\_\_ immer so viel Arbeit?

**TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.**

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

\_\_\_\_\_ 1. bestellen uns

\_\_\_\_\_ 2. holt sich

\_\_\_\_\_ 3. machen sich

\_\_\_\_\_ 4. kauft sich

\_\_\_\_\_ 5. nehmen sich

\_\_\_\_\_ 6. Machst .... dir

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, using the appropriate reflexive expression (verb plus reflexive pronoun).

1. Klaus and Inge are taking a glass of wine.

Klaus und Inge .... ein Glas Wein.

2. I'm ordering a cup of coffee.

Ich .... eine Tasse Kaffee.

3. You buy yourself a bicycle.

Du .... ein Fahrrad.

4. You don't help yourself.

Sie .... nicht.

5. They get themselves flowers from the garden.

Sie .... Blumen aus dem Garten.

6. We're making our meal.

Wir .... unser Essen.

7. Are you taking something to drink?

.... ihr .... etwas zu trinken?

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate reflexive expressions. Note that both accusative and dative reflexive constructions are required in this exercise

1. We amuse ourselves during the vacation.

Wir \_\_\_\_\_ in den Ferien.

2. Karl, are you buying the book?

Karl, \_\_\_\_\_ du \_\_\_\_\_ das Buch?

3. They know each other very well.

Sie \_\_\_\_\_ sehr gut.

4. She says "Sie" to her teacher.

Sie \_\_\_\_\_ mit ihrem Lehrer.

5. Peter, do you shave every morning?

Peter, \_\_\_\_\_ du \_\_\_\_\_ jeden Morgen?

6. Are you taking a taxi?

\_\_\_\_\_ ihr \_\_\_\_\_ ein Taxi?

7. I'm making myself a cup of coffee.

Ich \_\_\_\_\_ eine Tasse Kaffee.

8. The child is taking a glass of milk.

Das Kind \_\_\_\_\_ ein Glas Milch.

9. I apologize to him.

Ich \_\_\_\_\_ bei ihm.

10. We get ourselves flowers from the garden.

Wir \_\_\_\_\_ Blumen aus dem Garten.

11. He never washes.

Er \_\_\_\_\_ nie.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

\_\_\_\_\_ 1. amüsieren uns

\_\_\_\_\_ 2. kaufst .... dir

\_\_\_\_\_ 3. kennen sich

\_\_\_\_\_ 4. siezt sich

\_\_\_\_\_ 5. rasierst .... dich

\_\_\_\_\_ 6. Nehmt .... euch

\_\_\_\_\_ 7. mache mir

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

\_\_\_\_\_ 8. nimmt sich

\_\_\_\_\_ 9. entschuldige mich

\_\_\_\_\_ 10. holen uns

\_\_\_\_\_ 11. wäscht sich

START THE TAPE.

NOTES

Say the German, using the appropriate reflexive expressions. Note that both accusative and dative reflexive constructions are required in this exercise.

1. I am lying down on the sofa.

Ich .... auf das Sofa.

2. The students say "du" to each other in class.

Die Schüler .... im Unterricht.

3. We meet often.

Wir .... oft.

4. Are you taking a piece of cake?

.... du .... ein Stück Kuchen?

5. She buys herself a coat.

Sie .... einen Mantel.

6. Do you cut yourself often?

.... du .... oft?

7. I amuse myself at the beach.

Ich .... am Strand.

8. We write to each other often.

Wir .... oft.

9. You buy yourself a sports car.

Sie .... einen Sportwagen.

10. Are you taking a piece of chocolate?

.... du .... ein Stück Schokolade?

11. The child gets himself a ball.

Das Kind .... einen Ball.

12. You apologize to your friends.

Du .... bei deinen Freunden.

NOTES

### Section 3

#### Reflexive Constructions with Separable Prefix Verbs

Reflexive constructions can also be used with separable prefix verbs. In such cases, you would continue to use the appropriate reflexive pronoun (either accusative or dative) but would in addition be sure to place the separable prefix at the end of the sentence or clause.

Sich anziehen is a reflexive construction which means "to get dressed" (literally, "to dress oneself").

Remembering the position of the separable prefix, how would you say "He gets dressed" in German?

You would say: Er zieht sich an.

In this section, you will practice reflexive constructions using the following verbs:

sich anziehen	get dressed (literally, to dress oneself)
sich ausziehen	get undressed (literally, to undress oneself)
sich kennenlernen	become acquainted; meet for the first time; get to know one another

Study the above three verbs, then turn the page for exercises.

Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate reflexive constructions in the accusative case.

1. The students get to know each other at school.  
Die Schüler .... in der Schule ....
2. Aren't you getting dressed?  
.... ihr .... nicht ....?
3. It's easy to get to know people at parties.  
Auf Parties .... man .... leicht ....
4. You are getting undressed and going to sleep.  
Du .... und gehst schlafen.
5. The children don't like to get dressed.  
Die Kinder .... nicht gern ....
6. In the winter I always dress warmly.  
Im Winter .... ich .... immer warm ....

#### NOTES



If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

NOTES

\_\_\_\_\_ 1. zieht euch .... an

\_\_\_\_\_ 2. lernen sich ....  
kennen

\_\_\_\_\_ 3. ziehe mich .... an

\_\_\_\_\_ 4. zieht sich .... aus

\_\_\_\_\_ 5. Lernt .... euch ....  
kennen

\_\_\_\_\_ 6. ziehst .... dich ....  
an

\_\_\_\_\_ 7. zieht .... sich ....  
aus



Fill in the blanks, using reflexive expressions in the dative case.

1. We are putting on our coats.

Wir \_\_\_\_\_ die Mäntel \_\_\_\_\_.

2. I pour myself a glass of wine.

Ich \_\_\_\_\_ ein Glas Wein \_\_\_\_\_.

3. They are looking at the house.

Sie \_\_\_\_\_ das Haus \_\_\_\_\_.

4. The soldier is taking off his uniform.

Der Soldat \_\_\_\_\_ die Uniform \_\_\_\_\_.

5. Are you watching the movie tonight?

\_\_\_\_\_ ihr \_\_\_\_\_ heute abend den

Film \_\_\_\_\_?

Fill in the blanks, using the appropriate reflexive pronoun. Note that both dative and accusative reflexive constructions are used in this exercise.

1. I am seeing the sights of Berlin.

Ich \_\_\_\_\_ Berlin \_\_\_\_\_.

2. You pour yourself milk.

Du \_\_\_\_\_ Milch \_\_\_\_\_.

3. He gets undressed at the doctor's.

Er \_\_\_\_\_ beim Arzt \_\_\_\_\_.

4. I get dressed slowly.

Ich \_\_\_\_\_ langsam \_\_\_\_\_.

5. Why don't you pour yourself some coffee?

Warum \_\_\_\_\_ du \_\_\_\_\_ keinen Kaffee \_\_\_\_\_?

6. Are you looking at the magazine?

\_\_\_\_\_ du \_\_\_\_\_ die Zeitschrift

\_\_\_\_\_?

7. The child doesn't like to undress at night.

Das Kind \_\_\_\_\_ abends nicht gern \_\_\_\_\_.

8. Are you getting acquainted tonight?

\_\_\_\_\_ ihr \_\_\_\_\_ heute abend \_\_\_\_\_?

9. You are putting on your coat.

Du \_\_\_\_\_ den Mantel \_\_\_\_\_.

10. I am getting undressed now.

Ich \_\_\_\_\_ jetzt \_\_\_\_\_.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

\_\_\_\_\_ 1. ziehen uns .... an

\_\_\_\_\_ 2. schenke mir .... ein

\_\_\_\_\_ 3. sehen sich .... an

\_\_\_\_\_ 4. zieht sich .... aus

\_\_\_\_\_ 5. Seht .... euch .... an

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

\_\_\_\_\_ 1. sehe mir .... an

\_\_\_\_\_ 2. schenkst dir .... ein

\_\_\_\_\_ 3. zieht sich .... aus

\_\_\_\_\_ 4. ziehe mich .... an

\_\_\_\_\_ 5. schenkst .... dir  
..... ein

\_\_\_\_\_ 6. Siehst .... dir .... an

\_\_\_\_\_ 7. zieht sich .... aus

\_\_\_\_\_ 8. Lernt .... euch ....  
kennen

\_\_\_\_\_ 9. ziehst dir .... an

\_\_\_\_\_ 10. ziehe mich .... aus

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, using the appropriate reflexive constructions. Note that both accusative and dative forms are called for.

NOTES

1. She gets dressed quickly.  
Sie .... schnell ....
2. We are looking at a house.  
Wir .... ein Haus ....
3. The gentleman takes off his coat.  
Der Herr .... den Mantel ....
4. She is sightseeing in Berlin.  
Sie .... Berlin ....
5. You undress slowly.  
Du .... langsam ....
6. She pours herself a glass of wine.  
Sie .... ein Glas Wein ....
7. Why don't you put on your uniform today?  
Warum .... du .... heute nicht die Uniform ....?
8. In the winter, I always dress warmly.  
Im Winter .... ich .... immer warm ....
9. You'll get acquainted tonight.  
Ihr .... heute abend ....

LESSON 14

Reflexives II

This is the second of two Lessons on German reflexive constructions. The following sections are included:

1. Review of Reflexive Constructions with Reciprocal Meaning
2. Reflexive Constructions in the Imperative
3. Reflexive Constructions with Modal Auxiliary Verbs
4. Reflexive Constructions Referring to Clothing or Parts of the Body

1. Reflexive Constructions with Reciprocal Meaning

In *Lesson 13*, you learned the use of reflexive constructions in situations in which the action of the verb is in some sense directed back at the subject, for example:

Ich rasiere mich jeden Tag.

(I shave [myself] every day.)

You also practiced a few reflexive constructions that have a reciprocal meaning. In such a case, as you will remember, the subject of the sentence is frequently in the plural. Please turn the page and study the examples.

Wir treffen uns oft.

(We meet [one another] often.)

Paul und Maria lieben sich.

(Paul and Mary love one another.)

Herr und Frau Schulz, Sie verstehen sich gut.

(Mr. and Mrs. Schulz, you understand each other well.)

In all cases, the reciprocal aspect is exemplified by the fact that the persons referred to in the sentence act mutually ("love one another [each other]," "meet one another [each other]," etc.). You will recall from *Lesson 13* that reflexive sentences with reciprocal meaning do not differ outwardly from other reflexive constructions. They will, therefore, be used freely throughout this *Lesson*.

Listen to and repeat the German sentences below, noticing the reciprocal meaning.

1. Sie treffen sich vor dem Kino.

(They meet one another in front of the movie theater.)

2. Wir kennen uns schon lange.

(We have known each other for a long time.)

3. Peter und Maria, ihr versteht euch nicht.

(Peter and Maria, you don't understand one another; you don't get along.)

4. Wir lieben uns nicht mehr.

(We don't love each other any more.)

Write the German, supplying the appropriate verb form and reflexive pronoun on the basis of the given English.

1. We never greet one another.  
Wir \_\_\_\_\_ nie.
2. They meet one another often.  
Sie \_\_\_\_\_ oft.
3. Hans and Ingrid, you understand one another well.  
Hans und Ingrid, ihr \_\_\_\_\_ gut.
4. The father and mother are looking at each other.  
Der Vater und die Mutter \_\_\_\_\_.
5. They write each other daily.  
Sie \_\_\_\_\_ täglich.
6. Are you calling each other up?  
\_\_\_\_\_ ihr \_\_\_\_\_?

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

START THE TAPE.

Say the German, supplying the appropriate form of the verb and the reflexive pronoun on the basis of the given English.

1. Peter and Maria say "du" to each other now.  
Peter und Maria \_\_\_\_\_ jetzt.
2. We greet each other every morning.  
Wir .... jeden Morgen.
3. Don't we know each other?  
.... wir .... nicht?
4. Hans and Inge visit each other daily.  
Hans und Inge .... täglich.
5. You help one another gladly.  
Ihr .... gern.
6. We love each other.  
Wir ....

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

NOTES

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. grüssen uns
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. treffen sich
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. versteht euch
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. sehen sich an
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. schreiben sich
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Ruft .... euch an

## Section 2

### Reflexive Constructions in the Imperative

In earlier modules, you studied the imperative (command) forms of non-reflexive verbs in both formal and familiar address. A short review of these forms will be helpful in learning the use of the imperative with reflexive verbs.

In familiar address, German imperatives follow the same pattern as English imperatives. Just as an English speaker would say "Hans, wash the car," using the imperative form of the verb without any subject pronoun, a German speaker (when using familiar address) would also use the appropriate imperative form of the verb without any subject pronoun:

Hans, wasch das Auto!

(Hans, wash the car!)

In familiar address, a distinction is made in German as to whether one person or more than one person is being addressed by the speaker. This is indicated by the form of the verb:

Hans, wasch das Auto!

Hans und Peter, wascht das Auto!

Note, however, that a subject pronoun is never used in the familiar imperative, either when one or more than one person is being addressed.

In formal address, a subject pronoun is used with the imperative form of the verb:

Herr Meyer, waschen Sie das Auto!

There is no distinction in formal address as to the number of persons being addressed. Thus:

Herr Meyer, waschen Sie das Auto!

Herr Müller und Herr Meyer, waschen Sie das Auto!

The following table summarizes the familiar and formal imperative pattern for simple verbs used non-reflexively:

#### Familiar Address

Addressing one person: Hans, wasch das Auto!

Addressing more than  
one person: Hans und Peter, wascht das Auto!

#### Formal Address

Addressing one person: Herr Meyer, waschen Sie das Auto!

Addressing more than  
one person: Herr Müller und Herr Meyer,  
waschen Sie das Auto!

Now consider the following imperative sentences using a reflexive construction:

Hans, wasch dich!

Hans und Peter, wascht euch!

Herr Meyer, waschen Sie sich!

Herr Müller und Herr Meyer, waschen Sie sich!

What additional sentence element appears in each of the reflexive imperatives above?

In reflexive imperatives, the appropriate reflexive pronoun must always be included. This pronoun can be either in the accusative case or the dative case as required.

Listen to and repeat the following familiar imperatives using reflexive constructions. Note that both accusative and dative case reflexive pronouns are used.

1. Paul und Fritz, wascht euch schnell!  
(Paul and Fritz, wash yourselves quickly!)
2. Franz und Heidi, seht euch die Bilder an!  
(Franz and Heidi, look at the pictures!)
3. Peter, bestell dir etwas zu essen!  
(Peter, order yourself something to eat!)
4. Ingrid und Hans, entschuldigt euch!  
(Ingrid and Hans, excuse yourselves!)
5. Liebe Freunde, zieht euch warm an!  
(Dear friends, dress warmly!)
6. Paul, rasier dich täglich!  
(Paul, shave every day!)
7. Helga, schenk dir eine Tasse Kaffee ein!  
(Helga, pour yourself a cup of coffee!)
8. Max und Hans, holt euch die Bücher!  
(Max and Hans, get yourselves the books!)

Formal imperatives using reflexive constructions must of course use the personal pronoun Sie as well as the reflexive pronoun (accusative or dative). Listen to and repeat the following formal imperatives, noticing the position in the sentence of the personal pronoun and the reflexive pronoun.

1. Herr Meyer, ziehen Sie sich schnell an!  
(Mr. Meyer, get dressed quickly!)
2. Meine Herren, bitte setzen Sie sich!  
(Gentlemen, please sit down!)
3. Herr und Frau Müller, bitte schenken Sie sich Wein ein!  
(Mr. and Mrs. Müller, please pour yourselves wine!)
4. Herr Meyer, bitte rasieren Sie sich!  
(Mr. Meyer, please shave yourself!)
5. Meine Damen und Herren, holen Sie sich Kaffee!  
(Ladies and gentlemen, get yourselves some coffee!)
6. Fräulein Schmitt, bestellen Sie sich die Zeitschrift!  
(Miss Schmitt, order the magazine for yourself!)
7. Herr Brandt, bringen Sie sich etwas zu lesen mit!  
(Mr. Brandt, bring along something for you to read!)



Fill in the blanks, using imperative reflexive constructions in the accusative and dative case as appropriate.

1. Gentlemen, order yourselves a glass of wine!

Meine Herren, \_\_\_\_\_ Sie \_\_\_\_\_ ein Glas Wein!

2. Mr. Müller, get yourself something to eat!

Herr Müller, \_\_\_\_\_ Sie \_\_\_\_\_ etwas zu essen!

3. Mrs. Meyer, please sit down!

Frau Meyer, bitte \_\_\_\_\_ Sie \_\_\_\_\_!

4. Ladies, buy the magazines for yourselves!

Meine Damen, \_\_\_\_\_ Sie \_\_\_\_\_ die Zeitschriften!

5. Mr. and Mrs. Schulz, don't make so much work for yourselves!

Herr und Frau Schulz, \_\_\_\_\_ Sie \_\_\_\_\_ nicht so viel Arbeit!

6. Miss Wagner, dress warmly!

Fräulein Wagner, \_\_\_\_\_ Sie \_\_\_\_\_ warm \_\_\_\_\_!

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate imperative reflexive construction in the accusative or dative case. Note that both familiar and formal address are used.

1. Hans and Peter, wash daily!

Hans and Peter, \_\_\_\_\_ täglich!

2. Mrs. Müller, pour yourself a cup of coffee!

Frau Müller, \_\_\_\_\_ Sie \_\_\_\_\_ eine Tasse Kaffee \_\_\_\_\_!

3. Children, get dressed now!

Kinder, \_\_\_\_\_ jetzt \_\_\_\_\_!

4. Ingrid, look at the beautiful garden.

Ingrid, \_\_\_\_\_ den schönen Garten \_\_\_\_\_!

5. Mrs. Kramer, please take a piece of cake!

Frau Kramer, bitte \_\_\_\_\_ Sie \_\_\_\_\_ ein Stück Kuchen!

6. Inge, sit down on the sofa!

Inge, \_\_\_\_\_ auf das Sofa!

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. bestellen .... sich
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. holen .... sich
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. setzen .... sich
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. kaufen .... sich
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. machen .... sich
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. ziehen .... sich  
..... an

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. wascht euch
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. schenken .... sich ....  
..... ein
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. zieht euch .... an
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. sieh dir .... an
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. nehmen .... sich
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. setz dich

7. Peter, get dressed quickly!

Peter, \_\_\_\_\_ schnell \_\_\_\_\_!

8. Mother, buy yourself a newspaper!

Mutter, \_\_\_\_\_ eine Zeitung.

9. Gentlemen, excuse yourselves!

Meine Herren, \_\_\_\_\_ Sie \_\_\_\_\_!

10. Paul, undress quickly! (sich ausziehen)

Paul, \_\_\_\_\_ schnell \_\_\_\_\_!

11. Father and mother, look at the house!

Vater und Mutter, \_\_\_\_\_ das

Haus \_\_\_\_\_!

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

\_\_\_\_\_ 7. zieh dich .... an

\_\_\_\_\_ 8. kauf dir ....

\_\_\_\_\_ 9. entschuldigen .... sich

\_\_\_\_\_ 10. zieh dich .... aus

\_\_\_\_\_ 11. seht euch ....

.... an

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

START THE TAPE.

NOTES

Say the German, using the appropriate imperative reflexive construction in the accusative or dative case. Note that both familiar and formal address are used.

## NOTES

1. Ingrid, excuse yourself right away!  
Ingrid, .... gleich!
2. Gentlemen, sit down please!  
Meine Herren, bitte .... Sie ....!
3. Peter and Max, pour yourselves coffee!  
Peter und Max, .... Kaffee ....!
4. Mother, please look at the picture!  
Mutter, .... bitte das Bild ....!
5. Karl, wash yourself now!  
Karl, .... jetzt!
6. Hans and Peter, apologize to Mother!  
Hans und Peter, .... bei der Mutter!
7. Maria, sit down and eat!  
Maria, .... und iss!
8. Mr. Müller, buy yourself a car!  
Herr Müller, .... Sie .... ein Auto!
9. Franz, get yourself a beer!  
Franz, .... ein Bier!
10. Mr. and Mrs. Müller, watch the movie!  
Herr und Frau Müller, .... Sie .... den Film ....!

Section 3

Reflexive Constructions  
with Modal Auxiliary Verbs

In Lesson 9, you learned the forms and uses of the modal auxiliary verbs können, müssen, dürfen, wollen, sollen, and mögen, including the latter verb's derivative form of möchte.

You probably remember that when a modal auxiliary verb is added to a sentence, as for example in:

Er trinkt Wein.      →      Er möchte Wein trinken.  
(He drinks wine.)      (He would like to drink wine.)

the main verb in the sentence is moved to the end of the sentence and changed to the infinitive form.

If the main verb is changed to the infinitive, what verb is inflected; that is, what verb takes on an ending in agreement with the subject?

The modal auxiliary itself assumes this function.

The preceding discussion can be summarized in the following table:

<u>Simple Construction</u>	<u>Modal Auxiliary Construction</u>	
Er <u>trinkt</u> ein Bier.	Er <u>will</u> ein Bier <u>trinken</u> .	
↑	↑	↑
Main verb inflected	Modal auxiliary inflected	Main verb at end, in infinitive form

In the preceding module, you learned that the reflexive pronouns used in reflexive constructions are as a general rule placed immediately after the inflected verb. Thus:

Ich rasiere mich täglich.  
          ↑          ↑  
          main      reflexive  
          verb      pronoun following  
          inflected inflected verb

The same sentence pattern is followed in reflexive constructions which use modal auxiliaries. Suppose that you wanted to say "I have to shave every day," adding the modal auxiliary müssen to the above German sentence. Write this new German sentence on the line below, being careful to make all necessary changes in word order and verb forms.

\_\_\_\_\_  
START THE TAPE.

The correct answer is:

Ich muss mich täglich rasieren.

Listen to and repeat the sentences below, noticing the following points:

1. Main verb at the end of the sentence.
2. Modal auxiliary verb agrees with the subject of the sentence.
3. Reflexive pronoun (in accusative or dative case) immediately follows the modal auxiliary.

In addition, you will note that when the main verb is a separable prefix verb, the entire infinitive including the separable prefix goes as a unit to the end of the sentence:

Du sollst dich anziehen.

(You are supposed to get dressed.)

1. Ich muss mich schnell anziehen.  
(I have to dress quickly.)
2. Ihr sollt euch setzen.  
(You are supposed to sit down.)
3. Wir wollen uns entschuldigen.  
(We want to excuse ourselves.)
4. Ich kann mir nicht helfen.  
(I cannot help myself.)

5. Er möchte sich rasieren!  
(He would like to shave.)

Interrogative sentences have a slightly different sentence pattern from the declarative sentences you have just practiced. Study the following examples:

1. Sie will sich einen Mantel kaufen.  
(She wants to buy herself a coat.)
2. Will sie sich einen Mantel kaufen?  
(Does she want to buy herself a coat?)

As is characteristic of interrogative sentences (sentence 2), the subject and verb are inverted. Thus, the reflexive pronoun immediately follows the subject rather than the modal auxiliary verb:

Will            sie            sich  
  ↑            ↑            ↑  
inflected    subject    reflexive  
modal        pronoun    pronoun  
auxiliary

einen Mantel      kaufen?  
                          ↑  
                          main verb  
                          (in infinitive)

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of the reflexive pronoun.

1. We want to sit down at a table.

Wir wollen \_\_\_\_\_ an einen Tisch setzen.

2. You are allowed to buy a suit.

Du darfst \_\_\_\_\_ einen Anzug kaufen.

3. Inge would like to get herself something to drink.

Inge möchte \_\_\_\_\_ etwas zu trinken holen.

4. You must wash every morning.

Du musst \_\_\_\_\_ jeden Morgen waschen.

5. Do you want to lie down on the lawn?

Wollt ihr \_\_\_\_\_ auf den Rasen legen?

6. He is supposed to get dressed.

Er soll \_\_\_\_\_ anziehen.

7. I must shave every night.

Ich muss \_\_\_\_\_ jeden Abend rasieren.

8. He can cut himself with the blade.

Er kann \_\_\_\_\_ mit der Rasierklinge schneiden.

9. Would you like to shave?

Möchtest du \_\_\_\_\_ rasieren?

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

Say the German, supplying the appropriate form of the reflexive pronoun.

1. We want to have a good time in Germany.

Wir wollen .... in Deutschland gut amüsieren.

2. Hans must apologize to his mother.

Hans muss .... bei seiner Mutter entschuldigen.

3. Inge and Maria would like to get to know each other.

Inge und Maria möchten .... gern kennenlernen.

4. You are not allowed to make yourself a coat.

Du darfst .... keinen Mantel machen.

5. I would like to buy a car.

Ich möchte .... ein Auto kaufen.

6. Are Peter and Jutta supposed to buy a house?

Sollen Peter und Jutta .... ein Haus kaufen?

7. Gerda has to make herself a coat.

Gerda muss .... einen Mantel machen.

8. We can't meet each other tonight.

Wir können .... heute abend nicht treffen.

9. You are supposed to watch the movie.

Du sollst .... den Film ansehen.

10. Don't you want to get dressed?

Wollt ihr .... nicht anziehen?

11. They are not allowed to lie down on the lawn.

Sie dürfen .... nicht auf den Rasen legen.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. uns
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. dir
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. sich
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. dich
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. euch
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. sich
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. mich
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. sich
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. dich

Write complete German sentences on the basis of the given English. The modal auxiliary verb and main verb are shown in parentheses.

1. Inge and Hans cannot meet each other tonight.  
(können - treffen)

\_\_\_\_\_?  
2. You [fam. sing.] must apologize. (müssen -  
entschuldigen)

\_\_\_\_\_?  
3. May I pour myself some coffee? (dürfen -  
einschenken)

\_\_\_\_\_?  
4. I can't look at that. (können - ansehen)

\_\_\_\_\_?  
5. They would like to get dressed. (möchte -  
anziehen)

\_\_\_\_\_?  
6. Does she want to buy herself a house? (wollen -  
kaufen)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.



If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. Inge und Hans können sich heute abend nicht treffen.

---

2. Du musst dich entschuldigen.

---

3. Darf ich mir (etwas) Kaffee einschenken?

---

4. Ich kann mir das nicht ansehen.

---

5. Sie möchten sich (gern) anziehen.

---

6. Will sie sich ein Haus kaufen?

---

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences on the basis of the given English. The modal auxiliary verb and main verb are shown in parentheses.

1. Do you [fam. sing.] have to shave daily?  
(müssen - rasieren)

2. We are allowed to pour ourselves a glass of wine.  
(dürfen - einschenken)

3. May I get myself a chair? (dürfen - holen)

4. You [fam. pl.] want to buy yourself a car.  
[use Auto] (wollen - kaufen)

5. Mr. Meyer, would you like to see the sights of Berlin?  
(möchte - ansehen)

NOTES

## Section 4

### Reflexive Constructions

#### Referring to Clothing or Parts of the Body

Notice the following English sentences:

1. We are putting on our coats.
2. Hans is washing his hands.

On the basis of the English pattern for these two sentences, you might be led to render them in German as:

1. (\*) Wir ziehen unsere Mäntel an.
2. (\*) Hans wäscht seine Hände.

Although the above literal renderings of the English pattern are grammatically correct, there is a much more common and more idiomatic pattern used by German speakers which you will practice and reinforce in this section. This idiomatic pattern was touched upon in Section 3 of **Lesson 13** when the constructions sich (etwas) anziehen, sich (etwas) ausziehen were introduced. It will now be practiced more fully.

When referring to parts of the body or to articles of clothing, German speakers tend to use a dative reflexive construction instead of a possessive adjective.

Where an English speaker would say:

I am washing my hands.

using the possessive adjective "my," a German speaker would typically say:

Ich wasche mir die Hände.

Note that the German construction is NOT:

(\*) Ich wasche mir meine Hände.

(I wash to myself my hands.)

Because the reflexive pronoun mir of itself indicates "whose hands" are being washed, the use of a possessive adjective would be redundant, just as it would be redundant in English to say "I wash to myself my hands."

In order to avoid redundancy, the German pattern simply uses a definite article instead of a possessive adjective. The noun that receives the action of the verb (as well as the definite article accompanying it) are in the accusative (direct object) case, as you would expect.

When referring to parts of the body or to articles of clothing, German speakers tend to use a dative reflexive construction instead of a possessive adjective.

Where an English speaker would say:

I am washing my hands.

using the possessive adjective "my," a German speaker would typically say:

Ich wasche mir die Hände.

Note that the German construction is NOT:

(\* Ich wasche mir meine Hände.

(I wash to myself my hands.)

Because the reflexive pronoun mir of itself indicates "whose hands" are being washed, the use of a possessive adjective would be redundant, just as it would be redundant in English to say "I wash to myself my hands."

In order to avoid redundancy, the German pattern simply uses a definite article instead of a possessive adjective. The noun that receives the action of the verb (as well as the definite article accompanying it) are in the accusative (direct object) case, as you would expect.

Fill in the blanks on the basis of the given English, supplying both the correct dative reflexive pronoun and the appropriate definite article in the accusative case.

1. We wash our hair.

Wir waschen \_\_\_\_\_ Haare.

2. I take off my uniform.

Ich ziehe \_\_\_\_\_ Uniform aus.

3. She is cutting her hair.

Sie schneidet \_\_\_\_\_ Haare.

4. He is putting on his coat.

Er zieht \_\_\_\_\_ Mantel an.

5. You are washing your hands.

Du wäschst \_\_\_\_\_ Hände.

6. Are you washing your feet?

Wascht ihr \_\_\_\_\_ Füße?

7. We wash our feet.

Wir waschen \_\_\_\_\_ Füße.

8. They take off their coats.

Sie ziehen \_\_\_\_\_ Mäntel aus.

9. You wash your hair every night.

Du wäschst \_\_\_\_\_ jeden Abend \_\_\_\_\_ Haare.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

\_\_\_\_\_ 1. uns die

\_\_\_\_\_ 2. mir die

\_\_\_\_\_ 3. sich die

\_\_\_\_\_ 4. sich den

\_\_\_\_\_ 5. dir die

\_\_\_\_\_ 6. euch die

\_\_\_\_\_ 7. uns die

\_\_\_\_\_ 8. sich die

\_\_\_\_\_ 9. dir .... die

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences on the basis of the given English.

1. We wash our hands.

Wir waschen ....

2. I have to wash my hair.

Ich muss ....

3. They wash their feet.

Sie waschen ....

4. Mr. Meyer puts on his suit.

Herr Meyer zieht ....

5. I can't wash my hair.

Ich kann ....

6. You may put on your coat.

Du darfst ....

7. He takes off his uniform.

Er zieht ....

8. You can put on your coats.

Ihr könnt ....

In the following exercises, you will review the various reflexive constructions you have learned in this Lesson. Fill in the blanks on the basis of the given English.

1. Hans and Inge, wash your hands!

Hans und Inge, \_\_\_\_\_!

2. I would like to look at the picture.

Ich möchte \_\_\_\_\_.

3. You can get dressed.

Du kannst \_\_\_\_\_.

4. Peter, take your coat off!

Peter, \_\_\_\_\_!

5. Karl and Ingrid love each other.

Karl und Ingrid \_\_\_\_\_.

6. They must put on their coats.

Sie müssen \_\_\_\_\_.

7. Paul and Ruth, buy the house for yourselves!

Paul und Ruth, \_\_\_\_\_!

8. You are supposed to sit down.

Du sollst \_\_\_\_\_.

9. I want to wash my hair.

Ich will \_\_\_\_\_.

10. Children, can you get dressed?

Kinder, könnt \_\_\_\_\_?

11. The neighbors are not apologizing.

Die Nachbarn \_\_\_\_\_ nicht.

12. You can pour yourself a cup of coffee.

Sie können \_\_\_\_\_.

13. Franz wants to buy himself a house.

Franz will \_\_\_\_\_.

14. The child must wash his hands.

Das Kind \_\_\_\_\_.

15. We don't meet one another often. [use sich treffen]

Wir \_\_\_\_\_.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. wascht euch die Hände
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. mir das Bild ansehen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. dich anziehen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. zieh dir den Mantel  
aus
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. lieben sich
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. sich die Mäntel  
anziehen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. kauft euch das Haus
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. dich setzen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. mir die Haare waschen

If you made any mistakes, write the correct answers.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. ihr euch anziehen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 11. entschuldigen sich  
nicht
- \_\_\_\_\_ 12. sich eine Tasse Kaffee  
einschenken
- \_\_\_\_\_ 13. sich ein Haus kaufen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 14. muss sich die Hände  
waschen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 15. treffen uns nicht oft

START THE TAPE.

INDEX

OF GRAMMATICAL FEATURES

Each entry is followed by the roman numeral indicated in the title of the grammatical structure book and by the appropriate page numbers in this particular book. For example, the first entry of the index

"Aber" and "Sondern"                      I 160-162

means that these items will be found in Grammatical Structures I, on pages 160-162.

Index

<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>	<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
"Aber" and "Sondern"	I 160-162	- Comparative of ...	
Accusative Case		- Descriptive Adjectives	II 299-307
- Articles	I 12- 29	- Predicate Adjectives	II 287-298
- Descriptive Adjective Endings after "Der" words in Accusative Case		- Comparison of ...	II 227-286
- Singular	II 8- 14	- Descriptive Adjectives	
- Plural	II 22- 28	- In Appositions	II 29- 32
- Noun Objects - sentences with Dative and Accusative	I 85- 91	- Endings after "Der" words	II 1- 32, II 110-119
- Personal Pronouns	I 133-138	- Nominative Singular	II 4- 7
- Familiar	I 209-212	- Accusative Singular	II 8- 14
- Prepositions		- Dative Singular	II 15- 21
- requiring Accusative	I 119-122	- Plural	II 22- 28
- taking either Accusative or Dative	I 123-130	- Endings after "Kein" words	II 33- 55
- contracted forms of ...	I 131-132	- Nominative Singular	II 33- 43
- Reflexive constructions in Accusative Case	I 225-230	- Accusative Singular	II 44- 50
- Relative Pronouns	II 241-245	- Dative Singular	II 51- 54
- Word order for emphasis	I 92- 96	- Plural	II 55
Adjectives		- Unpreceded Descriptive Adjectives	II 124-130
- In Appellations, Salutations and Idiomatic Expressions	II 131-136	- Not Preceded by "Der" and "Kein" words	II 124-140
		- Past and Present Participles used as Adjectives	III 175-179
		- Predicate Adjectives	II 1- 3
		- comparative of	II 287-298
		- Participles (Past and Present) used as Predicate Adjectives	III 171-174
		- Quantity, Adjectives expressing	II 137-140



<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>	<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
Adverbs		Conditional	
- Comparison of Adverbs	II 308-312	- in "then" clauses	IV 27- 38
- Participles (Past and Present) used as ...	III 166-170	Contractions of Prepositions	I 131-132
Appellations, Salutations and Idiomatic Expressions		Contrary-to-Fact Statements	IV 27- 38
- Adjectives used in	II 131-136	- Containing Modals	IV 48- 52
Appositions, descriptive adjectives in	II 29- 32	- Past Subjunctive with Modals in...	IV 123-130
Articles		- Subjunctive of Strong Verbs in...	IV 72- 76
- Accusative Case	I 12- 20	"Da" Compounds	III 26- 28
- Dative Case		Dative Case	
- of Definite Article	I 49- 52	- Articles	
- of Indefinite Article	I 53- 54	- Definite	I 49- 52
Clothing or Parts of Body, reference to	I 258-260	- Indefinite	I 53- 54
Comparative		- Descriptive Adjective Endings After "Kein" words	
- of Descriptive Adjective	II 299-307	- in Dative Case	
- of Predicate Adjective	II 287-298	- Singular	II 51- 54
Comparison of Adjectives	II 277-286	- Plural	II 55
Comparison of Adverbs	II 308-312	- "Kein" and Possessive Adjectives	I 55- 60
		- Noun Objects - sentences with Dative and Accusative	I 85- 91
		- Passive Voice with Dative Objects	III 48- 54

Index

<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>	<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
- Personal Pronouns	I 67- 72	Descriptive Adjectives - see Adjectives, descriptive	
- Familiar	I 209-212	"Dieser" and "Der" words - see "Der" words	
- Prepositions		Double Infinitive Construction	
- requiring Dative	I 73- 84	- Future Tense, using Modal Auxiliary	IV 1- 26
- taking either Dative or Accusative	I 123-130	- Past and Present Perfect, using Modal Auxiliary	III 271-294
- contracted Forms of ...	I 131-132	Emphasis (with expressed word order)	I 92- 96
- Reflexive Constructions in Dative	I 231-237	Extended Adjectival Constructions	
- Relative Pronouns	II 246-249	- Containing Past Participles	III 230-239
- "Schmecken" and "Gefallen"	I 61- 66	- Containing Present Participles	III 240-242
- Dative Verbs in Present Perfect Passive	III 155-160	Extended Adverbial Constructions	
- Word order, for emphasis	I 92- 96	- Containing Present Participles	III 243-247
Definite Articles		Familiar Address	I 187-208
- Accusative Case of ...		- Imperatives	I 203-208
- Dative Case of ...	I 49- 52	- Personal Pronouns	
"Der" words ("dieser" and others)		- Nominative Case	I 187-194
- Adjectives endings after "Der" words	II 1- 32, II 110-123	- Accusative Case	I 209-212
- "Dieser" and other "Der" words	II 95-109	- Dative Case	I 209-212
- Genitive of "Der" words	III 110-129	- Possessive Adjectives	I 213-224

Index

<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>	<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
- "Sein" and "Haben" and other verbs	I 187-194	- Common Nouns, "der" and "ein" words - Genitive forms of ..	III 110-129
- Separable Prefix Verbs and Modals	I 195-202	- Interrogatives and Relative Pronouns, Genitive forms of	III 130-135
Foreign Verb ending in "-ieren" and Present Tense of ...	II 171-174	- Prepositions requiring Genitive	III 136-139
Future Tense	III 205-230	- Proper Nouns, Genitive forms of	III 140-144
- Double Infinitive (see Future Tense, Modal Auxiliary)		Idiomatic Expressions, Appellations and Salutations	
- Formation and Use of	III 211-221	- Adjectives used in	II 131-136
- in Passive Voice	III 224-230	Imperative	
- Modal Auxiliary, use with (Double Infinitive)	IV 1- 26	- Familiar Imperatives	I 203-208
- Future Tense in sentences containing Modals or verbs used like Modals	IV 1- 13	- Forms of	I 108-114
- Present Probability, expressed in sentences containing Modals	IV 14- 16	- Reflexive Constructions in ...	I 247-252
- Subordinate Clauses with True Modals	IV 17- 21	- Separable Prefix verbs and ...	I 115-118
- Subordinate Clauses with verbs used like Modals	IV 22- 26	Imperfect Tense	III 55- 65
"Gefallen" und "Schmecken"	I 61- 66	- Formation of	
Genitive Case	III 110-144	- with weak verbs	III 55- 65
		- with strong verbs	III 86-103
		- with mixed verbs	III 104-109
		- of "haben", "sein" and "werden"	III 73- 85
		- of Modals	III 66- 72

## Index

<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>	<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
- of Passive Voice sentences - containing Modals	III 248-261 III 262-270	"Lassen" and "Sich Lassen"	II 86- 94
<b>Indefinite Articles</b>		"Man" - use of as Indefinite Pronoun	
- Accusative Case of	I 12- 29	- omission of in Present Perfect Passive	III 155-160
- Dative Case of	I 53-54	- Passive equivalents of Active sentences with "Man"	III 48- 54
<b>Indefinite Pronoun "Man" - see "Man" used as indefinite pronoun</b>		<b>Mixed Verbs</b>	
<b>Inseparable Prefix Verbs</b>		- Imperfect Tense of	III 104-109
- Present Perfect Tense of	II 167-170	- Present Perfect Tense of	II 151-158
<b>Interrogative</b>		- Subjunctive Forms of	IV 91- 93
- Genitive Case of	III 130-135	<b>Modal Auxiliary Verbs</b>	
<b>Inverted Word Order</b>	I 25- 28	- Contrary-to-Fact Statements containing Modals	IV 48- 52
<b>Irregular Verbs - see strong verbs and mixed verbs</b>		- in Past Subjunctive	IV 123-130
<b>"Kein" Words</b>		- Double Infinitive Constructions	
- Adjective endings after ...	II 33- 35	- Future Tense Constructions with ...	IV 1- 26
- Dative of "Kein" and Possessive Adjectives	I 55- 60	- containing Modals or Verbs used like Modals	IV 1- 13
- Plural Forms of ...	I 177-186	- expressing Present Probability in sentences containing Modals	IV 14- 16
- Use of ...	I 29- 32	- In Subordinate Clauses; with true Modals,	IV 17- 21
		with Verbs used as Modals	IV 22- 26

<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>	<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
- Past Perfect Constructions with ...	III 289-292	Mögen - use of	I 155-159
- using Modals as Full Verbs in ...	III 293-294	"N - nouns"	I 21- 24
- Present Perfect Construction with ...	III 271-284	Nominative Case	
- using Modals as Full Verbs in ...	III 293-294	- Descriptive Adjective Endings after "der" words	
- using Modals in Subordinate Clauses	III 285-288	- Nominative, singular	II 4- 7
- Familiar Forms of Modals	I 195-202	plural	II 22- 28
- Formation and Use of Modals	I 139-140	- Descriptive Adjective Endings after "kein" words	
- Imperfect Tense of Modals	III 66- 72	- Nominative, singular	II 34- 43
- of Passive containing Modals	III 262-270	plural	II 55
- Mögen, use of	I 155-159	- of Familiar Personal Pronouns	I 187-194
- Passive Sentences containing Modals	III 42- 47	- of Relative Pronouns	II 232-240
- Imperfect Tense of ...	III 262-270	Participles	III 161-179
- Past Subjunctive with Modals		- Extended Adjectival Constructions	
- In Contrary-to-Fact Statements	IV 123-130	- containing Past Participles	III 230-239
- other uses of	IV 131-145	- containing Present Participles	III 240-242
- Reflexive Constructions with Modals	I 253-257	- Extended Adverbial Constructions	
- with Separable Prefixes	I 151-154	- containing Present Participles	III 243-247
- Verbs used like Modals	II 69- 94	- Formation of Participles, Past and Present	III 161-165

Index

<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>	<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
- Past and Present Participles		- of Separable Prefix Verbs and Reflexive Constructions	III 192-195
- used as Adverbs	III 166-170	- Use of ...	III 196-204
- used as Descriptive Adjectives	III 175-179	Past Subjunctive	
- used as Predicate Adjectives	III 171-174	- Forms of ...	IV 101-112
Parts of Body or Clothing, reference to	I 258-260	- with Modals	
Passive Voice		- Contrary-to-Fact Statements	IV 123-130
- with Dative Object; Passive equivalent of Active sentences with "man"	III 48- 54	- other uses of Past Subjunctive with Modals	IV 131-139
- Future Tense Passive	III 224-230	- Uses of ...	IV 113-122
- Imperfect Tense Passive	III 248-261	Perfect Tense - see Past Perfect and Present Perfect	
- Modal Auxiliary in Passive sentences	III 42- 47	Personal Pronouns - see Pronouns, Personal	
- Present Tense Passive	III 29- 54	Plural Forms	I 163-186
- Present Perfect Tense Passive	III 145-154	Possessive Adjectives	I 33- 48
- with "von" + Agent, Dative Verbs, omission of "man"	III 157-160	- Dative Case of Possessive Adjectives and "Kein"	I 55- 60
Past Participle - see Participles, past		Predicate Adjectives - see Adjectives, predicate	
Past Perfect Tense	III 180-204	Prefixes - see separable Prefix verbs and Inseparable Prefix verbs	
- Modal Auxiliaries used in ...	III 289-292	Pre-Noun Inserts	III 230-239
- used as Full Verbs	III 293-294		
- of Regular or Irregular Verbs	III 180-191		

# Index

<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>	<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
Prepositions		- Relative - see Relative Pronouns	
- requiring the Accusative	I 119-138	Quantity, adjectives expressing	II 137-140
- requiring the Dative	I 73- 84	Reciprocal Meaning, reflexive constructions with ...	I 244-246
- which take either Accusative or Dative	I 123-130	Regular Verbs - see Weak Verbs	
- requiring the Genitive	II 136-139	Reflexive Constructions	I 225-262
- contracted Forms of ...	I 131-132	- in the Accusative Case	I 225-230
- Relative Pronouns following ... - see "Relative Pronouns"		- in the Dative Case	I 231-237
- Verbs and Phrases with Prepositions	IV 140-145	- in the Imperative	I 247-252
Present Participles - see Participles, Present		- with Modal Auxiliaries	I 253-257
Probability		- with Reciprocal Meaning	I 244-246
- Future Tense expressing Present Probability	III 222-223	- with Separable Prefix Verbs	I 238-243
- in sentences containing Modals	IV 14- 16	- Reference to Clothing or Parts of the Body	I 258-260
Pronouns		Relative Pronouns	II 229-276
- Personal		- Overview of ...	II 229-231
- Dative Case of ...	I 67- 72	- Nominative Case of ...	II 232-240
- Accusative Case of ...	I 133-138	- Accusative Case of ...	II 241-245
- Familiar Personal Pronouns		- Dative Case of ...	II 246-249
- Nominative Case	I 187-194		
- Dative and Accusative Case	I 209-212		

Index

<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
- Genitive Case of ...	II 130-135
- Following Prepositions	
- requiring Accusative	II 256-257
- requiring Dative	II 258-262
- taking either Dative or Accusative	II 263-268
- "wer" and "was" as Relative Pronouns	III 1- 15
Salutations, Appellations and Idiomatic Expressions	
- Adjectives used in ...	II 131-136
"Schmecken" and "Gefallen"	I 61- 66
Separable Prefix Verbs	I 97-107
- Past Perfect of	III 192-195
- Present Perfect of	II 162-166
- Familiar Forms of	II 195-202
- Imperative Forms of	I 115-118
- Modal Verbs with ...	I 151-154
- Reflexive Constructions with ...	I 238-243
Sequence of Objects - see Word Order	
"Sondern" and "Aber"	I 160-162

<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
Strong Verbs	
- List of Commonly Used Strong Verbs	II 197-203
- Present Tense of	I 1- 11
- Imperfect Tense of Strong Verbs	III 86-103
- Past Perfect Tense of Regular and Irregular Verbs	III 180-191
- Present Perfect Tense of Irregular Verbs	II 151-158
- Subjunctive Forms of Strong Verbs	IV 59- 71
- in Contrary-to-Fact Statements	IV 72- 76
- in other Subjunctive Contexts	IV 77- 83
Subjunctive	
- Contrary-to-Fact Statements, subjunctive of "werden", conditional in "then" Clauses	IV 27- 38
- Contrary-to-Fact Statements	
- containing Modals	IV 48- 52
- subjunctive if Strong Verbs contained in ...	IV 72- 76
- of Strong Verbs	IV 59- 71
- in Contrary-to-Fact Statements	IV 72- 76
- in other Subjunctive Contexts	IV 77- 83



Index

<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
- of Weak Verbs	IV 84- 90
- of Mixed Verbs	IV 91- 93
- Subjunctive uses of Weak and Mixed Verbs	IV 93-100
- Subjunctive of "Haben", "Sein" in "if" Clauses	IV 39- 47
- Past Subjunctive - see Past Subjunctive	
- other uses of Subjunctive	IV 53- 58
Subordinating Conjunctions	
- Transposed Word Order after ...	II 204-212
Subordinate Clauses	
- Transposed word order in ...	II 213-221
- Following Question words	II 222-226
- Sentences Beginning with a Subordinate Clause	II 227-228
Superlative	
- of Descriptive Adjectives	II 299-307
- of Predicate Adjectives	II 287-298
Tenses - see specific tenses	

<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
Transposed Word Order - see Word Order, transposed	
Verbs - see: Strong Verbs	
Mixed Verbs	
Weak Verbs	
Modal Auxiliary Verbs	
Separable Prefix Verbs	
Inseparable Prefix Verbs	
"Von" + Agent Phrases	III 155-160
Weak Verbs	
- Imperfect Tense of Weak Verbs	III 55- 65
- Past Perfect Tense of Regular and Irregular Verbs	III 180-191
- Present Perfect Tense of Weak Verbs	II 144-150
- Subjunctive Forms of Weak Verbs	IV 84- 90
- Subjunctive Uses of Weak and Mixed Verbs	IV 93-100
"Wer" und "Was" as Relative Pronouns	III 1- 15
"Wo" Compounds	III 16- 25
Word Order	
- for Emphasis	I 92- 96
- Inverted	I 25- 28

## Index

<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
- Sentences with Dative and Accusative Noun Object	I 85- 91
- Sentences with two Noun Objects	II 56- 58
- Sentences with one Noun Object and one Pronoun Object	II 59- 63
- Sentences with two Pronoun Objects	II 64- 68
- Sequence of Objects	II 56- 68
- Transposed Word Order	II 204-228
- After Subordinating Conjunctions	II 204-212
- In Subordinate Clauses using Separable Prefix Verbs, Modal Auxiliary Verbs, Reflexive Constructions, and Present Perfect Tense	II 213-221
- In Subordinate Clauses following Question Words	II 222-226
- Sentences beginning with a Subordinate Clause	II 227-228